浩瀚英语

用英语说中国

旅游

Talk About China in English

Tourism

中国第一部双语百科全书

李兆平 仲锡 主编
[美] Robin Harrison 审校



上海科学普及出版社

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

用英语说中国

Talk About China in English



ISBN 978-7-5427-4100-4

浩瀚英语沟通热线：
010-88116531 88119278
bookifo@126.com

图书上架建议：英语学习

定价：36.00元

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

中国第一部双语百科全书

用英语说中国

Talk About China in English

旅游 Tourism

李兆平 仲 锡 主编
[美] Robin Harrison 审校

上海科学普及出版社

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

用英语说中国——旅游/文英广告有限公司编.—上海:上海科学普及出版社,2008.8

ISBN 978-7-5427-4160-4

Ⅰ.用… Ⅱ.文… Ⅲ.旅游指南—中国—汉,英

Ⅳ.K928.9 K892

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2008)第073126号

责任编辑 徐丹萍

用英语说中国——旅游

李光平 钟 鸣 主编

上海科学普及出版社出版发行

(上海中山北路832号 邮政编码200070)

http://www.pspsh.com

各地新华书店经销 上海市崇明县裕安印刷厂印刷

开本 787×1092 1/16 印张 17 字数 432000

2008年8月第1版 2008年8月第1次印刷

ISBN 978-7-5427-4160-4/H·298 定价:36.00元

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

本书编委会

- 主　编：李兆平　仲　锡
- 副主编：田华实　何苏宁
- 编　者：王德军　王敏华　贾　冰　朱胜超
- 总策划：李洪涛
- 总　监：高　玲
- 审　订：Robin Harrison
- 制　作：北京浩瀚英语研究所

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

前　言

随着我国改革开放的不断向前推进，旅游事业也越来越兴旺地发展起来。尤其是近些年来，来自世界各地的客人涌向中国，试图揭开这块辽阔土地的神秘面纱，从而了解中国悠久的历史，以满足其难以诠释的好奇和幻想。

具有悠久而又丰富历史的中国，一直为自己无数的历史遗迹和文化遗产感到自豪。几乎在中国的每一个地方，人们都能欣赏到各种神奇的景观，以及世代相传的故事和神话。

在中国人民的辛勤努力下，中国在各个方面都发生了翻天覆地的变化。从经济、文化、教育，到生活、娱乐和休闲，人们都在尽情地享受着国泰民安、和谐安睦的生活。国家的建设和发展日新月异，人们的思想、观点、生活方式也有了很大的变化。

在这种形势下，我们觉得有必要给来中国工作和旅游的外国友人——尤其是给那些来参加2008年北京奥运会的各国朋友提供一些帮助，把他们可能感兴趣的事情、人物和地方简单地作一些介绍，让他们对中国有个大致的了解。由此，我们编写了《用英语说中国》这套丛书。丛书共有10部，分别是：

1.《用英语说中国——历史》
2.《用英语说中国——民俗》
3.《用英语说中国——艺术》
4.《用英语说中国——文化》
5.《用英语说中国——名城》
6.《用英语说中国——名人》
7.《用英语说中国——旅游》
8.《用英语说中国——媒体》
9.《用英语说中国——体育》
10.《用英语说中国——名校》

《用英语说中国——旅游》，旨在介绍中国最有名的风景胜地，特别是列入世界遗产的一些旅游名胜。书中按照自然地理分布，将所涉及的风景胜地分为五大块，有宫殿、坛庙、陵墓、军事防御工程、古城、古村落、古典园林、宗教建筑、原始遗址、山脉河流等等。具体说，有华北地区的颐和园、北戴河、万里长城、避暑山庄和外八庙、北京故宫、天坛、孔庙、孔府、孔林、北京人遗址、泰山、平遥古城和大同云冈石窟；华东地区的黄山、武夷山、庐山、苏州园林、西湖、鼓浪屿、太湖、周庄、徐州“汉代三绝”、古城南京和大都市上海；西南地区的峨眉山、乐山大佛、九寨沟、黄龙、青城

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

山、都江堰、重庆大足石刻、布达拉宫和丽江古城；西北地区的秦始皇皇陵、革命圣地延安和敦煌莫高窟；中南地区的长江三峡、桂林山水、嵩山、少林寺、武陵源、洛阳龙门石窟和武当山古建筑群等等。

为了方便读者游览、阅读，笔者将每个单元里的内容安排在“**自然概况**”、“**特别提醒**”、“**主要景点**”和“**周边名胜**”等四个栏目中。“**自然概况**”栏目给读者提供了所涉及胜地的大致情况，如，地理位置、历史演变和公共声誉等；“**特别提醒**”栏目简要介绍了重点游览胜地，以免他们观光时将其错过；“**主要景点**”栏目实质上是一份主要景点的清单，可以使旅游者对所到之处有个全面了解；“**周边名胜**”栏目的内容对旅游者，尤其是对初次到访的游人很有帮助。

参编这套丛书的作者都是来自高等院校的英语教授、副教授和硕士研究生，大家都为能参与此项有意义的工作而感到兴奋和激动，都乐意为宣传中国和振兴中华贡献自己的一份力量。

《**用英语说中国**》这套丛书从策划到构思，从设计到编写，都是站在较高的角度，本着较新的水准，力求创造性地把中国的上上下下、东西南北、方方面面以简洁流畅的语言加以娓娓叙述。这无疑将给广大读者一种全新的感受。

《**用英语说中国**》这套丛书对于英语爱好者提高英语水平、激发学习英语兴趣会有所帮助的。丛书信息量庞大，涉及面广泛，古往今来，东南西北，犹如一部关于中国的小百科全书。丛书中的英文叙述和中文译述都严格遵循语言简练、结构明晰、形式活泼的宗旨。我们衷心希望这套丛书能够受到广大读者的喜爱和信赖。把中国介绍给世界，让世界上更多的人了解中国，是每个中国人的愿望。

限于编著者的水平和第一手资料的缺乏，丛书中有些地方的内容和信息可能存在着一些出入和欠缺，恳请广大读者予以批评指正。

《**用英语说中国**》丛书编者

2008 年 8 月

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Preface

With the rapid development of China's reform and opening-up, tourism is on the rise, esp. in recent years. More and more people from all over the world come to China, hoping to unveil the mystery of the vast land, to discover the origins of the long history in China and to satisfy their own curiosities and fantasies as well.

China, with a long and rich history, is always proud of her countless historical sites and cultural relics. Almost everywhere people encounter amazing miracles or natural beauties together with their everlasting legends and myths.

Furthermore, with the strenuous work of the whole nation, China has witnessed fundamental changes in every field. From national economy, culture and education to people's living standard, recreation and entertainments, everywhere and every soul is enjoying a peaceful and comfortable life in a friendly and harmonious atmosphere. The nation's construction and development are changing with each passing day while people's views and points are also keeping pace with the times.

Under such circumstances, we feel obliged to offer some help to those foreign visitors, esp. those who are coming to the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games, by giving them a brief introduction of the things, the people and the places they might be interested in. The series "***Talk About China in English***", therefore, come into being. The series consist of 10 books in all. They are:

1. **Talk About China in English—History**
2. **Talk About China in English—Folklore**
3. **Talk About China in English—Arts**
4. **Talk About China in English—Culture**
5. **Talk About China in English—Famous Cities**
6. **Talk About China in English—Celebrities**
7. **Talk About China in English—Tourism**
8. **Talk About China in English—Media**
9. **Talk About China in English—Sports**
10. **Talk About China in English—Famous Colleges and Universities**

In ***Talk About China in English—Tourism***, most famous scenery spots, especially some of China's world heritages are introduced to readers both at home and abroad. As we all know, China, an oriental nation of long civilization, is rich in such cultural and natural heritages. The latest study and discovery have extended its history of civilization beyond the recognized 5 000 years, probably thousands of years longer. Naturally, China possesses countless cultural heritages from its various nature wonders and very long history.

Talk About China in English—Tourism is divided into five items according to the natural geographical distribution. The scenery spots mentioned here include altars and temples, mausoleums, military defenses, old cities, ancient villages, classical gardens, religious buildings, primitive sites, mountains, rivers and so on. Specifically, we have Summer Palace, Bei Dai He, the Great Wall,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chengde Mountain Resort and Outlying Temples, Imperial Palace in Beijing, Temple of Heaven, Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion, Peking Man Site, Mt Taishan, The Ancient City of Pingyao and Yungang Grottoes in Datong from North China; Mt Huangshan, Mt Wuyi, Mt Lushan, Suzhou Classical Gardens, West Lake, Gu Lang Yu, Taihu Lake, Zhouzhuang, Three Superb Pieces of Han Dynasty in Xuzhou, Tourist City of Nanjing and Tourist City of Shanghai from East China; Mt Emei and Leshan Giant Buddha, Jiuzhaigou Gully, Yellow Dragon Scenic Area, Mt Qingcheng and Dujiang Weir, Dazu Rock Carvings in Chongqing City, Potala Palace and The Ancient City of Lijiang from Southwest China; Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor, Yan'an and Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang from Northwest China; Three Gorges, Guilin Scenery, Songshan Mountain and Shaolin Temple, Wulingyuan Scenic Area, Longmen Grottoes in Luoyang City and Wudang mountain from Central and South China.

In order to make things easier for the readers, we arrange the materials in every unit in this way: Firstly, ***Natural Features***, which offers some general knowledge about the mentioned scenery spot—its location, its history, its public position, etc.; Secondly, we come to ***Special Mention*** which picks out the most important things from the spot for the readers lest they should probably miss them when they do come to the area; The third part is a list of the ***Major Scenic Sites*** which gives visitors helpful guidance during their sightseeing and the last part is about ***Other Attractions Around*** the Place which is also necessary for visitors, especially for new comers.

Reading ***Talk About China in English—Tourism***, we will see that the integrity of culture and nature is the primary feature of Chinese civilization, which is perfectly reflected in China's scenery spots.

All the writers of the series are professors, associate professors and graduate—students of English from colleges and universities. We all feel happy and proud to have the chance to do our bit for the publicity of our motherland as well as her promotion.

From making plans to hatching plots, from working out schemes to carrying out the writings, the authors have been diligent and conscientious. Through our work, we want to provide readers with a rich and colorful introduction of an encyclopedic manner. The series are new and creative, and sure enough, they will bring fresh feelings and experiences to all readers.

The series are also helpful for all English lovers, including secondary school students and teachers, college students, office clerks and public servants.

Both the English and Chinese versions in the series are written in simple language, clear structure and lively style. We hope they will find popularity upon publication.

We are extremely grateful to the authors and publishers of all the materials we have chosen here in the series. We apologize for the insufficient information in some cases due to lack of resources. We intend to show every respect for intellectual property rights, but we hope our pleading of the permission to use these materials for the purpose of letting more foreign friends know China better will receive kind and generous consideration.

Authors

August 2008

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙



Chapter 1 North China 华北地区

Summer Palace
颐和园 …… (1)
Beidaihe
北戴河 …… (6)
The Great Wall
万里长城 …… (10)
Chengde Mountain Resort and Outlying Temples
避暑山庄与外八庙 …… (14)
Imperial Palace in Beijing
北京故宫 …… (20)
Temple of Heaven
天坛 …… (25)
Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion
孔庙 孔府 孔林 …… (30)
Beijing Man Site
周口店——北京人遗址 …… (35)
Mt. Taishan
泰山 …… (38)
The Ancient City of Pingyao
平遥古城 …… (43)
Yungang Grottoes in Datong City
大同云冈石窟 …… (46)

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Harbin International Ice Festival and Harbin Ice and Snow World
哈尔滨国际冰雪节和哈尔滨冰雪大世界 …… (50)
Five-Pagoda Temple and Other Temples in Hohhot
呼和浩特五塔寺和其他塔寺 …… (65)

Chapter 2 East China 华东地区

Mt. Huangshan
黄山 …… (77)
Mt. Wuyi
武夷山 …… (82)
Mt. Lushan
庐山 …… (87)
Suzhou Classical Gardens
苏州园林 …… (91)
West Lake
西湖 …… (95)
Gu Lang Yu
鼓浪屿…… (100)
Taihu Lake
太湖…… (103)
Zhouzhuang
周庄 …… (107)
Three Superb Pieces of Han Dynasty in Xuzhou
徐州的“汉代三绝” …… (110)
Traveling in a Tourist City—Nanjing
游览旅游城——南京…… (115)
Sightseeing in Shanghai
上海观光…… (127)
Xidi and Hongcun—Ancient Villages in Southern Anhui
皖南古村落——西递村与宏村…… (142)
Tongli—Millennium Eldest Town

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

千年古镇同里……（152）

Chapter 3 Southwest China 西南地区

Mt. Emei and Leshan Giant Buddha
峨眉山——乐山大佛……（160）
Jiuzhaigou Gully
九寨沟……（165）
Yellow Dragon Scenic Area
黄龙……（169）
Mt. Qingcheng and Dujiang Weir
青城山——都江堰……（174）
Dazu Rock Carvings in Chongqing City
重庆大足石刻……（178）
Potala Palace
布达拉宫……（181）
The Ancient City of Lijiang
丽江古城……（185）

Chapter 4 Northwest China 西北地区

Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor
秦始皇陵……（190）
Yan'an
延安……（194）
Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang City
敦煌莫高窟……（197）

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chapter 5 Central and South China 中南地区

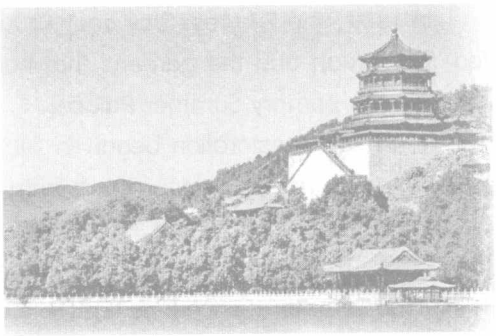
Three Gorges
长江三峡……(202)
Guilin Scenery
桂林山水……(207)
Songshan Mountain and Shaolin Temple
嵩山——少林寺……(212)
Wulingyuan Scenic Area
武陵源……(217)
Longman Grottoes in Luoyang City
龙门石窟……(223)
Wudang Mountain
武当山……(227)
Sanya Attractions
三亚景点……(232)
Haikou Attractions
海口景点……(245)

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chapter 1 North China 华北地区

颐和园 Summer Palace

Natural Features



The Summer Palace is located on the western edge of Beijing, between the fourth and fifth ring roads, close to the western hills, 12km from central Beijing. It is the largest and best-preserved imperial garden in China. Its Chinese name, Yi He Yuan, translates as 'Garden for Maintaining Health and Harmony'.

As its name implies, the Summer Palace was used as a summer residence by China's imperial rulers—as a retreat from the main imperial palace now known as the Palace Museum or Forbidden City—a pleasureground in the countryside, yet near to the city.

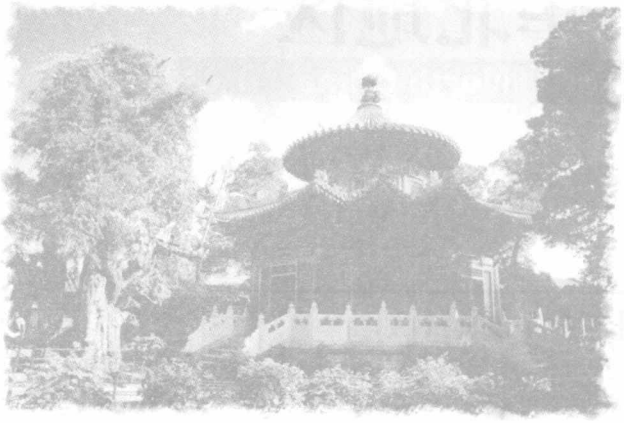
The gardens that became the Summer Palace date from the Jin Dynasty (1115 ~ 1234). Later, the Mongol Emperor Kublai Khan (Yuan Dynasty, 1279 ~ 1368), who wanted to improve Beijing's water supply, ordered the construction of canals to transport water from the Western Hills to the Summer Palace. He also enlarged the lake (today's Kun Ming Lake) to act as a reservoir.

In 1750, Emperor Qian Long (1736 ~ 1796) of the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911) added substantially to the gardens of the Summer Palace. His appointed designers reproduced the styles of various palaces and gardens from around China. Kun

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Ming Lake was extended to imitate the West Lake in Hangzhou.

In 1860, the Anglo-French Allied Forces invaded Beijing and set fire to many of the buildings within the Summer Palace.



In 1886, Dowager Empress Ci Xi, with embezzled funds from the Imperial Navy, restored the grand gardens. The reconstruction and enlargement of the Summer Palace continued for ten years. After completion, she renamed the gardens 'Yi He Yuan' (Garden of Peace and Harmony).

In 1889, the Empress Dowager Ci Xi moved her administration to the renovated Yi He Yuan and the gardens that had long been an imperial pleasure ground became the primary Summer Palace.

A full-scale restoration began in 1903, and today's Summer Palace is more or less the same as the palace rebuilt from then.

After the success of the 1911 Revolution, the Summer Palace was opened to the public. Then, after the last Qing Emperor Pu Yi was thrown out of the Palaces in 1924, the Summer Palace was turned into a park. The Summer Palace has become a popular and relaxing destination for both domestic and international tourists now.

The Summer Palace was designated a World Heritage site by UNESCO in 1998.

Special Mention

The palace is the largest and the best-preserved royal garden in the world with the richest cultural connotation, hence it is honored as a museum of royal gardens. Its general layout makes full use of the hill and the lake, together with the borrowed views from the peaks of the west mountain, which brings about infinite scenery variations with exceeding beauty. The buildings in the palace are the architectural cream from all parts of China. The administrative and residential areas in the east of the palace are typical of the quadrangle in northern China, where the enclosed courtyards are connected by various roofed causeways. The lake area in its south, however, is an imitation of West Lake of Hangzhou, where a dyke divides the lake in two, thus giving it an obvious touch of southern

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

China landscape. On the north side of Longevity Hill, the scene is that of Tibetan lamasery, where stand white pagodas and buildings like blockhouses. And in the north, the Suzhou Market Street, with all kinds of shops and its crisscrossing watercourses, is again in the style of the waterscape in southern China.



Major Scenic Sites

Hall of Benevolence and Longevity Area

East Palace Gate
Hall of Benevolence and Longevity
Hall of Jade Billows
Hall of Joyful Longevity: Rock of Green Fungus
Garden of Virtue and Harmony

Kunming Lake Area

Kunming Lake
Pavilion of Flourishing Culture
Seventeen-arch Bridge
Pavilion of Broad View
Penglai Isle: Shrine for Universal Blessing Rain
Six Bridges of West Dyke: Tower of Bright Scene

Long Gallery Area

Long Gallery
Hall of Oriole Singing
Clear and Calm Boat

Longevity Hill Area

Hall of Dispelling Clouds
Tower of Buddhist Incense
Prayer Wheel Repository

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Treasure Cloud Pavilion
Sea of Wisdom
Pavilion of Great Happiness
Garden of Harmonious Interests
Rambling in Picture
Four Continents
Suzhou Market Street

Other Attractions Around the Place

Beijing arboretum
Fragrant Hills
Yuanmingyuan Park



颐和园
Summer Palace

自然概况

颐和园位于北京西郊，在四环和五环之间，紧挨西山，距北京市中心 12 公里。颐和园是中国最大的皇家园林。其汉语意思为“颐养和谐之园”。

颐和园的英文名称“Summer Palace”（夏天的宫殿）意思是这里是皇帝在夏天的居住之地——一个离城不远、位于乡村的、供帝王后妃们逍遥游乐的紫禁城。

早在金代（1115 ~ 1234），颐和园就已经开始成为花园。随后，元朝（1279 ~ 1368）的忽必烈又改进北京的水系统，开挖运河把西山的水引到颐和园，他还扩建了昆明湖作为蓄水池。

1750 年，清朝（1644 ~ 1911）的乾隆皇帝再接再厉，把这个花园修建成了皇家园林。他让设计师们复制中国的各种园林风格汇集于此。昆明湖就是模仿杭州西湖而造的。

1860 年，英法联军侵略北京，纵火烧毁了这里的大部分建筑。

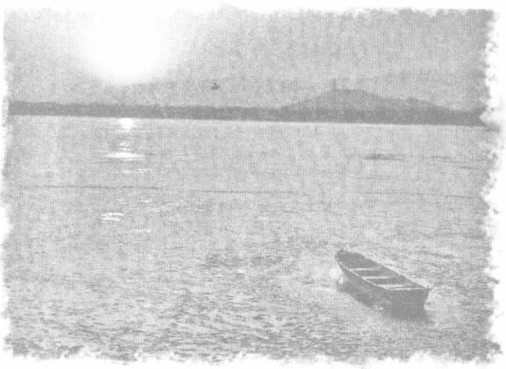
1886 年，慈嬉太后挪用海军经费重建并扩建了这些花园，工程持续 10 年之久，完工后她将其改名为颐和园（颐养和谐之园）。

1889 年，慈嬉连同她的行政部门一起搬到修复一新的颐和园。从此，颐和园

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

变成了首要的皇家夏日游乐场所。

1903 年，慈嬉逃亡返回北京后，又对颐和园做了全方位的修复。今天的颐和园与修复后的颐和园大致相似。



1911 年革命成功后，颐和园开始对外开放。不过，颐和园成为真正的公园是 1924 年清朝的末代皇帝被赶出宫殿之后。如今，颐和园已成为中外游人喜欢游玩的好去处。

1998 年，颐和园被联合国教科文组织列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

颐和园是世界上建筑规模最大，保存最完整，文化内涵最丰富的皇家御苑，被誉为皇家园林博物馆。全园以山湖形式巧做安排，以西山群峰为借景，使园内景色变幻无穷，美不胜收。园内建筑吸收了中国各地建筑的精华。东部的宫殿区和内廷区，是典型的北方四合院风格。一个个封闭的院落由游廊连通；南部的湖泊区是仿杭州西湖景色，一道西堤把湖泊一分为二，具有浓郁的江南情调；万寿山的北面，是典型的西藏喇嘛庙宇风格，有白塔及城堡式建筑；北部的苏州街，店铺林立，水道纵通，又是典型的江南水乡风格。

主要景点

仁寿殿景区

东宫门	仁寿殿
玉澜堂	乐寿堂：青芝岫
德和园	

昆明湖景区

昆明湖	文昌阁
十七孔桥	廓如亭
蓬莱岛：广润灵雨祠	西堤六桥：景明楼

长廊景区

长廊	听鹂馆
清晏舫	

万寿山景区

排云殿	佛香阁
转轮藏	宝云阁
智慧海	景福阁

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

谐趣园:知鱼桥　　画中游
四大部洲　　苏州街

周边名胜

北京植物园
香山
圆明园

北戴河
Beidaihe

Natural Features

Set on the coast some 280 kilometers east of Beijing, the seaside holiday resort of Beidaihe is famous not only as a tourist center and as a good place to recuperate after illness, but also as one of the best places in the world to see migratory birds.



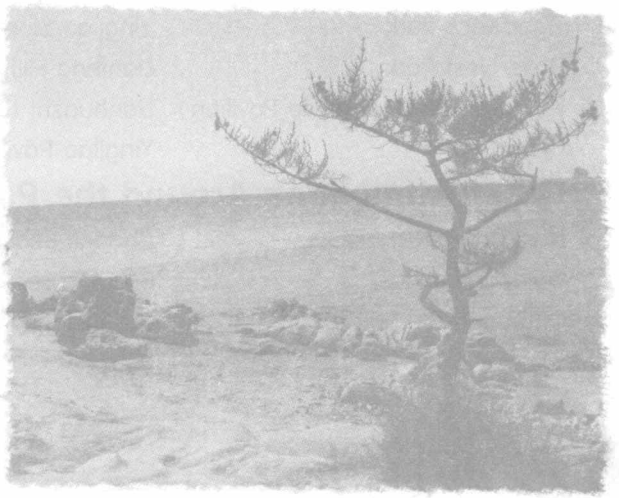
Beidaihe is a district belongs to Qin Huangdao City. It has a moderate area of about 70.3 square kilometers with a permanent of population of 60 000 people.

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

However, its picturesque scenery and agreeable climate make it a world-famous summer resort.

China's Yanshan Mountain Range winds its way thousands of miles from the west to the eastern seaboard. It sends a number of waterways like the Henghe, Daihe, Yanghe and Luanhe rivers down to the Bohai Sea at Beidaihe. They create a vast area of wetlands, mud-banks, and lagoons with rich feeding and good places for birds to rest. Here migratory routes come together like great seasonal flocks of birds linking northeast Asia with south China, Indo-China, Australia and even far off east Africa.

Nature has richly endowed Beidaihe with bird species and of the 1198 found in China, 416 have been recorded at Beidaihe. This is a part of the world that plays host to 18 species of gulls, 3 of swans, and 6 of cranes.



Beidaihe has enjoyed a good reputation since 1893. It was then that a British engineer help build a railway line recognized that with its low hills, beaches and sea breezes, the headland was an ideal place to escape the summer heat of the interior. On his recommendation, the first holiday makers arrived. Beidaihe, until then a poor fishing village, quickly became popular with diplomats, merchants, missionaries, and well-off Chinese.

Since the first two parties of Chinese bird enthusiasts visited Beidaihe in 1999, more and more domestic visitors have joined bird watching groups going there on vacation.

Special Mention

Back in the 1940s Danish scientist, Axel Hemmingsen, published a report saying that he had seen large numbers of cranes at Beidaihe, but no one followed up on this at the time. Then in 1985 guided by Hemmingsen's report, British ornithologist Doctor Martin Williams first came to Beidaihe. With the help of an official from the Beidaihe tourism authority, Dr. Williams visited Shijiutuo Island

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

in nearby Leting County. What he discovered there was far beyond his expectations and he found many new kinds of birds. Since then, accompanied by his Chinese counterpart, Xu Weishu, he has brought many overseas professionals together in Beidaihe every year to enjoy watching the birds and carry out research.

Xu Weishu, vice director of the China Ornithological Society tells of the time when as many as 2 729 oriental white storks were recorded in Beidaihe, doubling the previous world record.

Look into the skies of Beidaihe in the first ten days of November every year and you will be sure to see flocks of red-crowned cranes and white cranes.

The year from May 1999 to May 2000 saw ten new species added to the list for Beidaihe.

Major Scenic Sites

Tiger Rock Park
Dove Nest Park
Wanghai Ting (Seaside Pavilion)
Ocean Park
Yingjiao Stones
Lianfeng Hill
Lianhuashi (Lotus Stone Park)
Yingjiao Pavilion

Other Attractions Around the Place

Nan Dai He
Golden Seacoast
Qinhuangdao Safari Park
Changli Seashores
Biluo Tower
Jade Island



北戴河
Beidaihe

自然概况

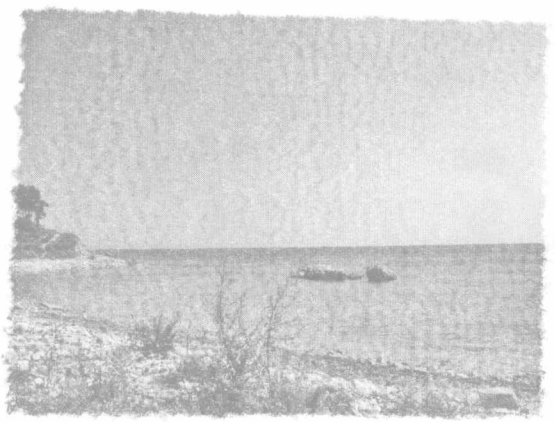
北京东面280公里处的沿海城市、避暑胜地北戴河，不仅因其为旅游中心和康复疗养场所而著名，也因其为世界上观赏鸟类的最佳地点之一而闻名于世。

北戴河是秦皇岛市的一个区，面积不大，只有70.3平方公里；人口不多，只有6万居民。然而北戴河那如诗如画的风景和四季如春的宜人气候却使它成为世界著名的避暑胜地。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

我国的燕山山脉从西到东，沿着海岸线绵延数千公里，漫长曲折，将许多水路如恒河、戴河、阳河和滦河都经北戴河而流入渤海。这些蜿蜒的河流形成了具有丰富营养的大片沼泽、泥滩和泻湖，非常适合鸟类的栖息和生活。这里汇集了许多候鸟迁徙线路，让季节性迁移的巨大鸟流把东北亚和中国南方、印度支那、澳大利亚甚至是更远的东非都连接在了一起。

大自然赐给北戴河最理想的鸟类家园，这里有着品种最多的鸟群。在中国所已发现的1 198种鸟中，其中有416种可以在北戴河见到。这里还饲养着世界上18种海鸥，3种天鹅和6种天鹤的一个地区。



北戴河自1893年起就名扬四海。当时，正在帮助修铁路的一位英国工程师发现了这个地方山岭低缓，沙滩松软，海风温柔，是个避暑消夏的理想岬角之地。在他的建议下，第一批度假者来到了这里。随着大批外国传教士、外国官员、富商大贾以及有钱的中国人来此购买土地，修建别墅，原本一个穷困小渔村的北戴河打那以后迅速发展起来。

自从1999年两批中国鸟类爱好者到访过北戴河以后，越来越多的国内游客都加入到假期观鸟团的行列。

特别提醒

20世纪的40年代，丹麦科学家艾柯赛尔·海明森发表了一份纪实报告，说他在北戴河看到了许多天鹤，但在当时并没有引起人们的注意。后来到了1985年，英国鸟类学家马丁·威廉姆斯博士根据海明森报告的指点首次来到北戴河。在北戴河旅游局一位官员的帮助下，威廉姆斯博士去了位于附近乐亭县内的石臼坨岛。在那里他又有了意想不到的新发现：他发现了许多新的鸟类品种。从那以后，在他的中国同行许维枢的陪同下，他每年都要带上许多国外专业人士来到这里一起观鸟，一起搞研究。

中国鸟类协会副主席许维枢说，曾经有一个时候，多达2 729只东亚白鹳聚集在北戴河，比当时世界纪录还要超出一倍。

每年11月的头十天，仰望北戴河的上空，你肯定能够看到成群成群的红顶鹤（丹顶鹤）和白天鹤。

1999年5月到2000年5月的一年时间里，又有十个鸟类新品种被加写进北戴河的鸟类名册。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

主要景点

老虎石
鸽子窝公园
望海亭
海洋公园
鹰角石
联峰山(莲蓬山)
莲花石
鹰角亭

周边名胜

南戴河
黄金海岸
秦皇岛
翡翠岛
昌黎海滨
碧螺塔
野生动物园

万里长城
The Great Wall

Natural Features

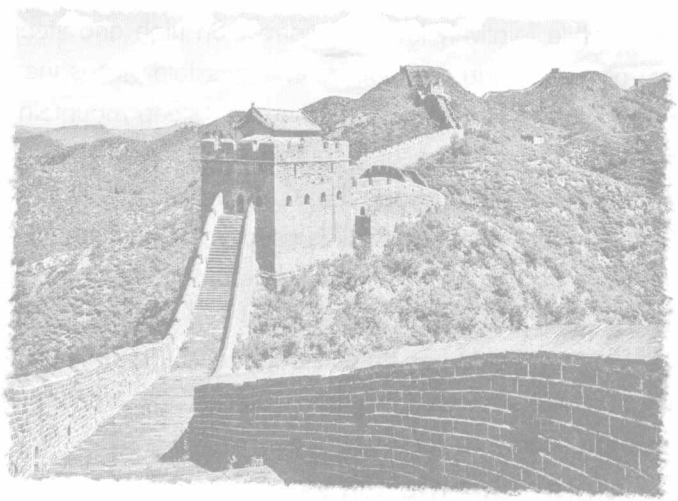
From Shanhaiguan, northeast of Qinhuangdao City, Hebei Province in the east coast, the Great Wall rises and falls with the contours of the mountains westward, crossing the provinces, municipalities and autonomous regions of Liaoning, Hebei, Tianjin, Beijing, Shanxi, Inner Mongolia, Shaanxi, Ningxia and Gansu for 6 700 kilometers, to end at Jiayuguan, southwest of Jiayuguan City in Gansu Province.



The construction of the wall began during the Spring and Autumn period (770 ~ 476 BC) and Warring States period (475 ~ 221 BC). Ducal states at that time built walls to defend their own territories. After the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty crushed all rival states, he founded the first centralized and unified dynasty in Chinese

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

history. To consolidate the country and ward off invasion by ethnic minority tribes in the north, he had the walls linked and extended, giving rise to the 5 000-kilometer-long Qin Great Wall. Later dynasties from Han (206 BC ~ 220 AD) to Ming (1368 ~ 1644) kept building and improving the wall, extending it more than 1 000 kilometers to today's scale. The wall stretches across the vast area of north and central China reputed as "Enlivened for 2 000 years and Maneuvering for 100 000 li".



Great Wall of Han Dynasty was about 10 000 km long, and it is the longest of all in history. Today, we can easily find its remains along a rough line from Xinjiang Autonomous Region to Hebei Province. Silk Road went on along the wall for half of its length. Former president of United States Richard Nixon remarked on his visiting, "This is the Great Wall and only a great people with a great past could have a great wall and such a great people with such a great wall will surely have a great future".

The Great Wall comprises walls, passes, watchtowers, castles and fortresses. The walls are made of large stone strips. From east to west, the sections at Shanhaiguan, Jinshanling, Mutianyu, Badaling and Jiayuguan have become tourist attractions.

The Great Wall we see today mostly dates back to the Ming Dynasty. The best-preserved and most imposing section is at Badaling in Beijing. The section, located outside the Juyongguan Pass, is made of large blue bricks and has an average height of 7.8 meters. Five to six horses can be ridden abreast along it. At regular intervals there is an arched door leading to the top of the wall. The walls are covered with many lookout holes, window embrasures and castellated crenels. Beacon towers were also built at fixed intervals for passing on military information. All these indicate the important role of the Great Wall in military defense.

As one of the most magnificent ancient defense works, the Great Wall is

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

known as one of the wonders of the world. All tourists now know the saying, "You are not a real person until you have climbed the Great Wall."

The Great Wall was put on the world cultural heritage list in 1987.

Special Mention

The format of its wall varied in accordance with the topography and defense requirements. In plains or key passages it was built very high and solid, while relatively low and narrow on high and steep mountains to reduce the cost of money and man labor. In impossible places the wall—like mountain ridges were included in as a part, termed as "steep mountain wall", or cut into cliffs as part of it, termed as "cut mountain wall".

In places like Juyong Pass, Badaling, and some in provinces of Hebei, Shanxi, and Gansu, the wall is usually 7 ~ 8m high, 4 ~ 5m thick on top and 6 ~ 7m at the bottom. Towards the inside on the top is a parapet wall about 1m high in case of the soldiers' falling over, and that outwards is crenellated, about 2m high. The top of this side has breaches for watch, and holes below for shooting and stoning. In vital sections, the top is blocked by a series of crossing barrier walls in case the enemy climbed up.

Major Scenic Sites

Shanhai Pass: Old Dragon Head
Simatai Section
Jinshanling Section
Juyong Pass
Pingxing Pass
Yanmen Pass
Hanging Wall
Horn Mountain Section
Gubeikou Section
Mutianyu Section
Badaling Section
Niangzi Pass
Jiayu Pass

Other Attractions Around the Place

Guyaju Remains
Kangxi Prairie

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

万里长城
The Great Wall

自然概况

长城起于河北省东海岸秦皇岛市东北部的山海关，一路跌宕起伏，顺山西行，至西端甘肃省嘉峪关市西南的嘉峪关，横贯辽宁、河北、天津、北京、山西、内蒙古、陕西、宁夏和甘肃等省、市、自治区，全长约6 700公里。

长城的修建始于春秋（公元前770年～公元前476年）、战国（公元前475年～公元前221年）。当时的诸侯国为了保护自己的领地各自修建城墙以抵御外侵。秦始皇灭六国之后建立起了中国历史上第一个中央集权制的国家。为了巩固国防和抵御北方少数民族的侵扰，秦始皇把各个国家的城墙连接起来并予以加长，形成了5 000多公里的秦长城。之后的汉朝（公元前206年～公元220年）至明朝（1368～1644）不断对长城进行加固与延伸，使之又增加了1 000多公里，最终形成了长城如今的规模。长城绵延于中国北部和中部的广大土地上，被称为“上下两千年，纵横十万里”。

历史上最长的长城是汉长城，它长达一万多公里。时至今日，人们仍可看见散布在新疆至河北之间的汉长城遗迹。古丝绸之路有一半的路程就是沿着这条长城而行的。美国前总统尼克松参观长城时说：“只有一个伟大的民族，才能造得出这样一座伟大的长城”。

长城由城墙、关城、了望台、墩堡、营城等组成。城墙由大块的石条砌成。从东至西，长城的山海关、金山岭、慕田峪、八达岭、嘉峪关等地段已成为旅游胜地。

我们今日所看到的长城大部分建于明朝。其中保存最完好以及最负盛名的是位于北京境内的八达岭长城。坐落在居庸关的这部分长城全由青砖砌成，平均高度7.8米，可以并排通过5至6匹战马。城墙每隔一段就设建一个通向长城顶部的拱门。城墙上布满了了望口、射洞和墩堡。每隔一定距离就建造一座烽火台，用来传递军情。在长城的整个军事防御体系中，这一切都起着非常重要的作用。

作为古代最宏大的防御工事之一，长城是世界上的一个奇迹。如今的游客都知道这样一句话：“不到长城非好汉”。

长城于1987年被列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

长城的城墙根据地形和防御功能的需要而建筑。凡在平原或要隘之处修筑得十分高大坚固;在高山险峻之处却较为低矮狭窄,以节约人力和费用;在一些无法修筑的陡峭之处,则采取了"山险墙"和"劈山墙"的办法。

在居庸关、八达岭和河北、山西、甘肃等地的长城城墙,一般高达 7 ~ 8 米,底部厚约 6 ~ 7 米,墙顶宽约 4 ~ 5 米。在城墙顶上,内侧设宇墙,高一米多,以防巡逻士兵跌落;外侧一面设垛口墙,高 2 米左右;垛口墙的上部设有望口,下部有射洞和擂石孔,以观看敌情和射击、滚放擂石之用。在有些重要城墙的顶上还建有层层障墙,以抵抗万一登上城墙的敌人。

主要景点

山海关:老龙头,角山长城
司马台长城
金山岭长城
居庸关
平型关
雁门关
悬壁长城
黄崖关长城
古北口长城
慕田峪长城
八达岭长城
娘子关
嘉峪关

周边名胜

古崖居遗址
康西草原

避暑山庄与外八庙
Chengde Mountain Resort and Outlying Temples

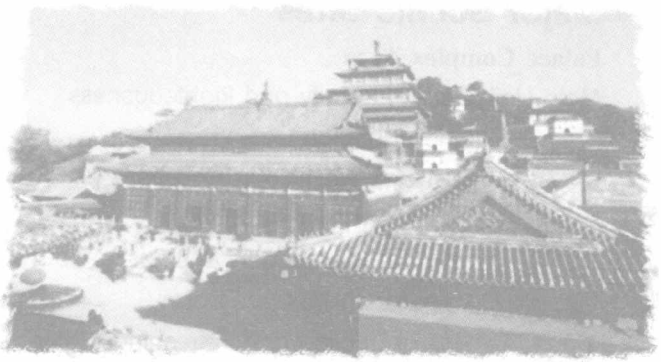
Natural Features

The Mountain Resort in Chengde is one of the four most famous Chinese gardens and one of the largest and best-preserved imperial palaces outside Beijing. It used to be a summer resort and hunting ground for emperors of the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911). They also used the palace to organize martial art competitions and receive the elite of ethnic minority groups from around China.

The Mountain Resort is located in Chengde City, Hebei Province, covering an

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

area of 564 square meters, almost half of Chengde's urban area. It is enclosed by a wall 10 400 meters long. Construction began in 1703 under the rule of Emperor Kang Xi and was completed in 1790 under the rule of Emperor Qian Long. It was a second political center apart from Beijing, for the emperor would stay here for about half a year to attend to political, military, ethnic, and foreign affairs. There are more than 100 buildings within the resort, which is divided into two sections: palace zone and garden zone. The Rehe (Jehol), the shortest river in the world, only 14.7 kilometers long, runs through the resort. The gardens are superbly designed to take in the very best of various styled gardens, integrating the features of both the northern meadows and the southern waterscapes, in a layout of lake in the southeast, mountain in the northwest, and plain in the northeast.



In the outlying area, 11 magnificent temples stand on the hills in a semi-circle. As they were divided into eight sections under the administration of the Beijing-based Harmony and Peace Lamasery (a monastery for lamas), they were usually referred to as the "Eight Outer Temples". Only seven temples, including Puren Temple (Universal Humanity), Temple of Sumeru (Happiness and Longevity) and Puning Temple (Universal Tranquility) remain intact. They comprise the largest temple building complex existing in China. They were used by nobles of various ethnic minority groups who came to have an audience with the Qing emperors, and to reside and conduct religious activities. These temples, built on the elevating hill slopes, look grand and splendid. The wood engraved Buddha in the Puning Temple, 22.28 meters tall, is the largest of its kind in the world. Its waist measures 15 meters and it has 42 arms. Some 120 cubic meters of wood, weighing some 110 tons, were used to make the Buddha.

The buildings of the resort were all built in blue bricks and gray tiles that are traditional and plain, whereas its outlying temples are all roofed with glazed color tiles that looks grand, golden, luxury, and glorious.

The summer resort and the surrounding temples were placed on the world cul-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tural heritage list in 1994.

Special Mention

The resort consists roughly of the palace and the scenic area, and the latter could be subdivided into three: the lake, the meadow, and the mountain. The palace is traditional and majestic, the lake is shining with silver water, the meadow is green with grass and flowers, and the mountain is grand with surprising peaks, all enclosed in the palace wall as long as 10km or more. Altogether there are over 120 buildings of halls, courtyards, or temples, with 72 recognized scenic spots, 36 by each of the two highly admired Emperors Kangxi and Qianlong. The dominant mood of the buildings is plainness and elegance, an inspiration from the nature of the landscape.

Major Scenic Sites

Palace Complex Area

Main Hall: Gate of Beauty and Righteousness
Inner Meridian Gate
East and West Court Houses
Hall of Simplicity and Piety
Study of Four Understandings
Emperor's Attendant Dorm
Hall of Cooling and Refreshing Water
West Courtyard
Tower of Cloud-mountain Scenery
Pine and Crane Hall
Pine Rustling from All Gullies

East Palace: Tower of Pure Melody
Hall of Industrious Government

Garden Quarter

Lake Area
Clear Lake
Isle of Surging Waves
Fragrant Pavilion by Water
Green Surrounding Isle
Spring of Rehe Hot River
Gold Hill Isle
Inner Lake

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Pure Comfort Hill Villa
Happy Lake
Happy Lake Pavilion
Frontier Lake
Upper Lake and Lower Lake
Clean Water and Elegant Mountain
Farther and Purer Fragrance
Island of Moolit Water Songs
Tower of Mist and Rain
Fungus Path of Cloud Dyke
Lion Forest of Literary Garden
Water Heart Pavilion

Meadow Area

Garden of Ten Thousand Trees: Thousand Feet Snow
Serene House
Knowledge Imparting Hall
Temple of Eternal Bless and Sarira Stupa

Mountain Quarter

Hazel Hollow
Pine Cloud Gorge

Outlying Eight Temples

Temple of Universal Love
Temple of Universal Joy
Temple of Frontier Peace
Temple of General Peace
Temple of Universal Peace
Temple of Universal Blessing
Temple for Potarka Doctrine
Temple of Manjusri
Sumeru Temple of Fortune and Longevity

Other Attractions Around the Place

Mulan Hunting Ground
National Forest Park
Hammer Rock
Cockscomb Peak

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

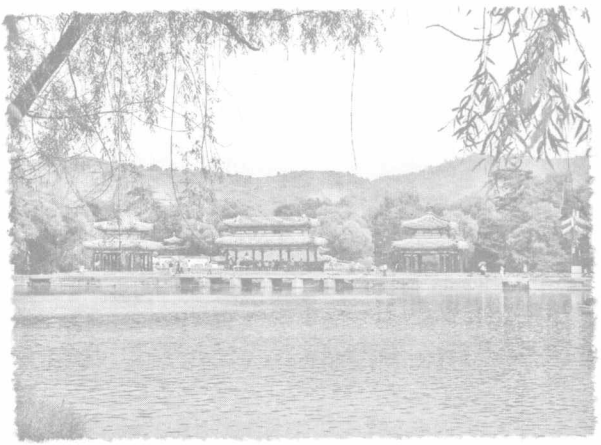
Arhat Mountain
Twin Peaks Scenery Area

避暑山庄与外八庙
Chengde Mountain Resort and Outlying Temples

自然概况

承德避暑山庄是中国四大名园之一，也是北京以外保存得最大最好的帝王宫殿之一。这儿过去是清王朝(1644～1911)皇帝避暑和狩猎的地方，也是常常被用来举办武术比赛和接待来自全国各地的少数民族精英的地方。

避暑山庄位于河北承德市，占地564平方米，几乎是承德市区一半的面积，外围墙长10 400米。避暑山庄于1703年康熙当朝的时候开始修建的，1790年乾隆年间完工。是清代在北京以外的第二个政治中心。皇帝每年大约有一半的时间要在这里度过，在这里处理重要的政治、军事、民族和外交等国家大事。山庄内有100多个建筑，分为两部分：宫殿区和花园区。世界上最短的河-热河只有14.7千米流经山庄。该公园之所以设计出色是由于采纳吸收了各种园林风格的设计特色，融汇了江南水乡和北方草原的特色，形成了东南湖区、西北山区和东北平原区的布局。



山庄外围11座宏伟的寺庙呈半圆形耸立在几座山上。这些寺庙在北京雍和宫的管辖下被分成了八个部分，因此它们通常被称为“外八庙”。只有包括溥仁寺、须弥福之庙、普宁寺在内的七座庙宇至今保存完好。它们是中国现存的最大的庙宇建筑群。少数民族贵族在此和清朝皇上会面，并在此居住和举办宗教活动。这些建在山坡上的庙宇宏伟壮观。普宁寺里的木雕佛像高22.28米，是世界上最大的木雕像，其腰围15

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

米，有 42 条胳膊。建造这座雕像用去了大约 120 立方重达 110 吨的木材。

山庄内的建筑都用青砖灰瓦建造，呈现出一种古朴自然的风格；而在其周围建造的外八庙，则采用彩色的琉璃瓦，远远望去，巍峨壮观，金碧辉煌，一派富丽堂皇的景象。

避暑山庄及周边庙宇于 1994 年被列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

特别提醒

避暑山庄分为宫殿区和苑景区两大部分，苑景区又分为湖区、平原区和山峦区。宫殿区古朴庄严，湖泊区碧波粼粼，平原区绿草茵茵，山峦区奇峰迭起，外有长达 10 公里的宫墙围护。全庄共有宫殿、庭院、寺庙等建筑物约 120 余处，风景点 72 处，其中由康熙和乾隆各题名 36 处。山庄内的宫殿建筑以朴素淡雅为主基调，取自然山水之本色。

主要景点

宫殿区

正宫：丽正门　　内午门
　　东、西朝房　　澹泊敬诚殿
　　四知书屋　　万岁照房
　　烟波致爽殿　　西所
　　云山胜地楼　　松鹤斋
　　万壑松风
东宫：清音阁　　勤政殿

苑景区

湖区　　澄湖
沧浪屿　　芳渚临流
环碧岛　　热河泉
金山岛　　内湖
清舒山馆　　如意湖
如意湖亭　　塞湖
上湖和下湖　　水芳岩秀
香远益清　　月色江声
烟雨楼　　芝径云堤
文园狮子林　　水心榭

平原区

万树园：千尺雪，宁静斋
文津阁　　永佑寺
舍利塔

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

山区

榛子峪	松云峡

外八庙

溥仁寺	普乐寺
安远庙	广安寺
普宁寺	普佑寺
普陀宗乘之庙	殊像寺

须弥福寿之庙

周边名胜

木兰围场	国家森林公园
棒棰山	鸡冠山
罗汉山	双塔山



北京故宫
Imperial Palace in Beijing

Natural Features

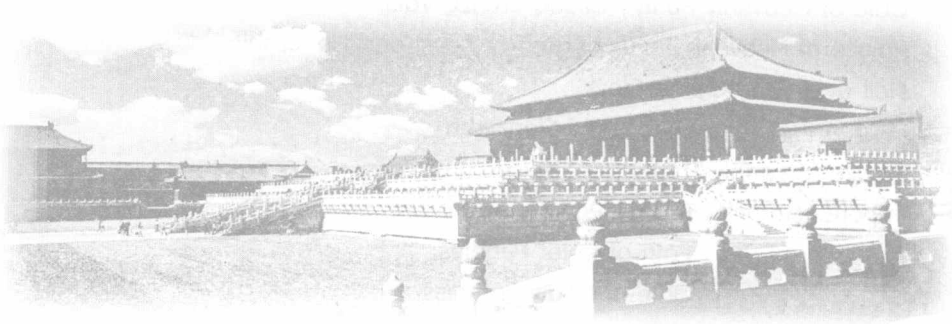
The Imperial Palace, also called The Forbidden City, in the heart of Beijing is the largest and most complete imperial palace and ancient building complex in China, and the world at large. Its construction began in 1406 and was completed 14 years later, having a history so far of some 600 years. Twenty-four emperors from the Ming and Qing (1644 ~ 1911) dynasties lived and ruled China from there. Most of the buildings in the Forbidden City were rebuilt many times, although they maintained the original architectural style.

The Forbidden City, extending 753 meters from east to west, and 961 meters from north to south, makes a rectangular shape and covers a total area of 720 000 square meters. It consists of several dozen compounds of varying sizes and some 9 900 bays of rooms, with a total floor area of 150 000 square meters. Most of the buildings were built with wood, roofed with yellow glazed tiles and built on blue-and-white stone foundations, looking solemn and brilliant. City walls are 10 meters high, and a 52 meter-wide moat surrounds the Forbidden City. Three-storied tow-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ers are placed at each corner of the wall.

The building arrangement within the Forbidden City is symmetrical. The Hall of Supreme Harmony, the Hall of Central Harmony and the Hall of Preserving Harmony, which comprise the outer palace, and the Hall of Heavenly Purity, the Hall of Union and the Hall of Earthly Tranquility, comprising the inner palace, stand in a line from south to north on the central axis. The 8 km central axis runs through the entire old Beijing city to Yongdingmen in the south and Zhonggulou in the north. The throne symbolizing imperial power is positioned at the center of this central axis.



The buildings of the Forbidden City fully embody the artistic features and style of ancient Chinese palace architecture, and can be called a masterpiece in Chinese, even world, architectural history. Today, as the largest museum of cultural relics in China, the Forbidden City, also called the Palace Museum, collected and displayed some one million precious historical relics from the Shang Dynasty (16th century ~ 771 BC) through to the Qing Dynasty. It was made part of the world cultural heritage list in 1987.

Special Mention

Forbidden City enjoys great importance in the history of world architecture. As a classic masterpiece, it fully embodies the tradition and style of ancient Chinese architecture. Specifically, it is outstanding with these features: red walls and yellow tiles, carved and painted beams and pillars, axial symmetry, high base, large eaves, multi pillars, varied roof styles in accordance with ranks, and immortals or mystical beasts as decoration on the roof ridges.

Major Scenic Sites

Middle Tour route

Meridian Gate: Golden Water Bridge

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Gate of Supreme Harmony
Square of Hall of Supreme Harmony: Imperial Avenue
Danbi
Hall of Supreme Harmony
Hall of Complete Harmony
Hall of Preserving Harmony: Museum of Art History
Hall of Literary Glory
Hall of Military Prowess
Hall of Virtue Bathing
Gate of Heavenly Purity: Gilded Bronze Vats
Palace of Heavenly Purity: Board of "Just and Honorable"
Hall of Union: Chime Clock
Copper Kettle Clepsydra
Palace of Earthly Tranquility: Museum of Toys
Imperial Garden: Bronze Pot
Path of Color Pebbles
Gate of Godly Prowess

Inner West Tour route

The West Six Halls: Palace of Concentrated Beauty
Hall of Manifest Harmony
Queen Consort's Palace
Palace of Eternal Spring
Palace of Eternal Life
Hall of the Absolute
Hall of Mental Cultivation: Empress Dowager's "Reign behind Curtain"
Room of Three Rare Treasures
Gate of Imperial Prosperity

Inner East Tour route

East Six Halls: Ming and Qing Dynasties' Art and Craft Exhibition Hall
Museum of Chinese Stationary
Hall of Abstinence
Museum of Clocks
Archery Pavilion

Other Attractions Around the Place

Outer East Tour route

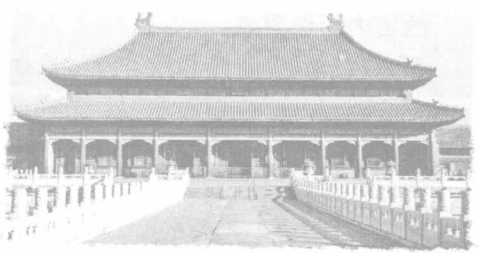
教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Hall of Imperial Zenith: Garden of Palace of Peaceful Old Age
Tower of Melodious Sounds
Hall of Delight and Longevity: Gold and Jade Articles Exhibition Hall
Pearl Consort Well
Tian'anmen Square
The Ming Tombs
Cave of Stone Flower Scenic Area
GongWangFu, the house of King Gong
Xu Beihong Memorial
Memorial of Jiaozhuanghu Tunnel Warfare Remains
West Zhou Dynasty's Yandu Remains
Beijing Ancient Obsevatory
Hongluo Temple
Baiyun Temple
Lugou Bridge

北京故宫
Imperial Palace in Beijing

自然概况

北京故宫也叫紫禁城，位于北京市中心，是中国乃至世界上现存最大、最完整的古建筑群。紫禁城始建于1406年，14年后完工，迄今已有600多年的历史。紫禁城内先后居住过明清两个朝代统治中国的24位皇帝。尽管紫禁城内的大部分建筑都经过多次重建，但其却一直保持着初时的建筑风格和样式。



紫禁城东西宽753米，南北长961米，呈矩形状，其面积约为725 000平方米。紫禁城由几十座大小不一的建筑物组成，其中约有宫室9 900多间，总建筑面积

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

150 000平方米。多数紫禁城宫殿都是木结构、黄琉璃瓦顶、青白石底座建筑，看上去庄严肃穆，金碧辉煌。紫禁城墙高达10米，四周围着一条宽52米的护城河。城墙的四角各有一座三层角楼。

紫禁城的建筑布局是对称的。太和、中和、保和三大殿为外朝；乾清宫、交泰殿、坤宁宫为内廷。外朝和内廷坐落在由南向北的中轴线上。南至永定门，北至钟鼓楼，总长8公里的中轴线穿越整个古代北京城。象征皇权的王座就坐落在这条中轴线的中心位置上。

紫禁城内的建筑充满了艺术特色与中国古代建筑风格，可以称为中国甚至世界建筑史上的杰作。如今，也称为故宫博物院的紫禁城是中国最大的文化藏品博物院，收藏着从商朝（公元前16世纪～公元前771年）至清朝以来的几百万件珍贵的文物。故宫博物院于1987年被列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

特别提醒

故宫在世界建筑史上具有极其重要的地位，是建筑艺术的经典之作，集中体现了我国古代建筑艺术的优秀传统和独特风格。故宫的建筑有如下几个突出的特点：红墙黄瓦，雕梁画栋；中轴布局，左右对称；高台基，大屋檐，多圆柱；屋顶多样，等级分明；屋脊多用“仙人”、“走兽”等装饰。

主要景点

故宫内中路景点

午门：金水桥，太和门

太和殿广场：御道，丹陛，太和殿，中和殿

保和殿：历代艺术馆，文华殿，武英殿，浴德堂

乾清门：鎏金大铜缸

乾清宫：“正大光明”匾

交泰殿：自鸣钟，铜壶滴漏

坤宁宫：玩具馆

御花园：铜鼎，花石子甬路，神武门

故宫内西路景点

西六宫：储秀宫，体和殿，坤宫，长春宫，永寿宫，太极殿

养心殿：慈禧“垂帘听政”处，三希堂

隆宗门

故宫内东路景点

东六宫：明清工艺美术馆，文房四宝馆，斋宫

钟表馆　　箭亭

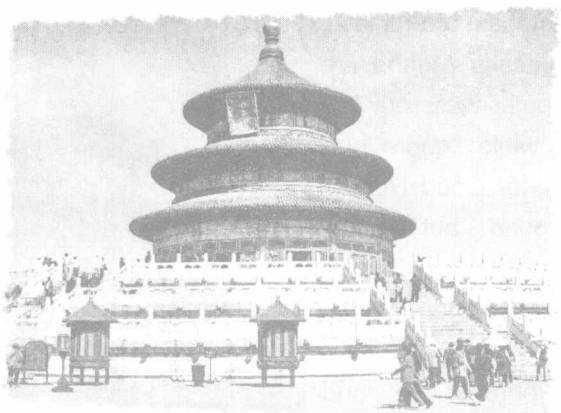
周边名胜

故宫外东路景点

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

皇极殿:宁寿宫花园
畅音阁
乐寿堂:珍宝馆,珍妃井
天安门广场　　十三陵
石花洞风景区　　恭王府
徐悲鸿纪念馆　　焦庄户地道战遗址纪念馆
西周燕都遗址　　北京古观象台
红螺寺　　白云观
卢沟桥

天坛
Temple of Heaven



Natural Features

The temple lies at the east of Inside Street Yongdingmen Gate, originally a place to worship Heaven and pray for good harvest.

Temple of Heaven is unique in architectural achievement. It is majestic, sublime, harmonious with the cypress woods, and grand, inviting a strong sense of lofty and farseeing, in addition to mystique and affection.

The total area of the temple is 273 hectares, three times to seven times larger than Forbidden City and near that of Summer Palace. Two walls separate the temple into an outer court and an inner court. The north wall is taller and semicircular, while the south wall is lower and rectangular, in accordance with the belief of

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

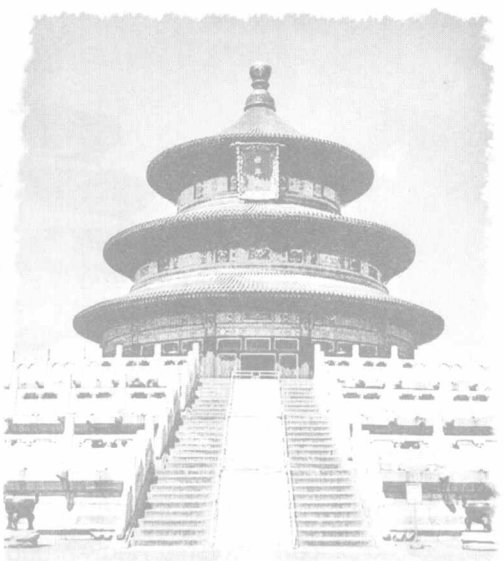
"round heaven above square earth" and "lofty heaven and humble earth".

The primary buildings of the temple are in the inner part, which is again separated by a wall. In the north of this part is Altar of Prayer for Grain for spring ceremony, with Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest as the center. In the south is the huge Circular Mound Altar for worshipping Heaven on winter solstice. Linking the two parts is Danbi Bridge, also referred to as Haiman Avenue, the axis of the complex sides with large woods of cypress.

Temple of Heaven is among the first key cultural sites under state protection, and in December 1998 the UNESCO inscribed it on the World Heritages List. Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest, a marvelous building in the temple, is now one of the symbols of Beijing.

Special Mention

Ancient Chinese believed that the sky was round and the earth was square, therefore the two shapes were frequently used in the temple. Its inner and outer walls, for instance, are round above but square below. The three tiers of Circular Mound are round, but its two outer walls are low and circular inside while square outside. Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest and its base are round, but its surrounding wall is square. Such format is not hard to find elsewhere in the temple.



Moreover, the number "9" and its multiples are repeatedly encountered in the temple. Hall of Prayers for Good Harvest is related with agriculture, therefore the numbers found here are connected with farming: "4" for the year seasons, "12" for the months, and "24" for the solar terms.

Major Scenic Sites

Main Tour Route

Circular Mound Altar: Heart of Heavenly Stone
Wood Stove

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Iron Flame Burner
Lamp Post
Divine Court: Glaze Gate
Imperial Vault of Heaven
East and West Side Halls: Nine-dragon Cypress
Echo Wall
Three-tone Stone
Conversation Stone
Danbi Bridge: Robing Platform
Altar of Prayer for Grain
Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest: Danbi Stone Carving
Astronomical Pillar
Marble of Dragon and Phoenix
Throne and Tablets
East and West Side Halls　　Altar of Prayer for Good Harvest
Hall of Imperial Heaven

West Tour Route

Hall of Abstinence
Hall Without Beams: Pavilion of Bronze Statue
Big Bell of Emperor Qianlong
Double-Circle Longevity Pavilion
Court of Divine Music
House of Sacrifice

East Tour Route

Long Corridor: Seven-star Stones
Divine Kitchen and Divine Storehouse: Sweet Spring Well

Other Attractions Around the Place

China Ethnic Culture Park　　China Scinece and Technology Museum
Beijing Zoo　　Beihai Park
Beijing Ocean Park　　Jingshan Park
China Milennium Monument　　Yonghe Lamasery
Zhongshan Park　　Temple of the Earth
Temple of the Sun

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

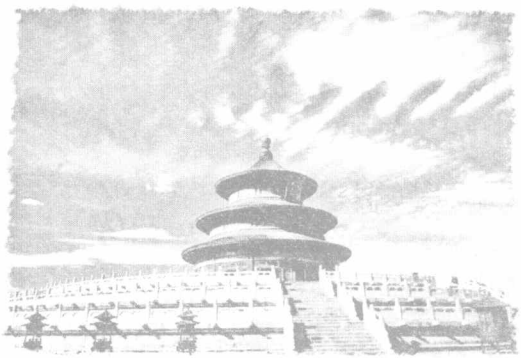
天坛
Temple of Heaven

自然概况

天坛在北京市崇文区永定门内大街东侧，是明清两朝皇帝“祭天”、“祈谷”的地方。

北京天坛代表着中国古代建筑史上特殊的成就。天坛的建筑形体庄重、挺拔，与周围的道路和大片柏树林地极为和谐，显得庄严肃穆、意境幽远、大气恢宏，营造出了意在高远、图谋存志、显现神秘、诱发情感的特殊环境氛围。

天坛占地273公顷，比故宫大3到7倍，略小于颐和园。整个建筑布局呈“回字形”，四周环筑坛墙两道，把全坛分为内坛、外坛两大部分。坛域北端围墙高大，呈半圆形；南边的围墙较低而呈方形，寓意“天圆地方”与“天高地低”之说。



天坛的主要建筑集中于内坛。内坛用墙分隔为南北两部分。北为“祈谷坛”，用于春季祈祷丰年，中心建筑是祈年殿；南为“圜丘坛”，专门用于“冬至日”祭天，其中心建筑是一个巨大的圆形祭台，名“圜丘”；天坛正是“祈谷”、“圜丘”两坛的总称。两坛之间以高于地面、长360米的甬道——丹陛桥相连，形成一条南北长1 200米的天坛建筑轴线，两侧为大面积的古柏树林。

天坛是首批全国重点文物保护单位之一。1998年12月联合国教科文组织将其作为世界文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。天坛内的奇妙建筑祈年殿现已成为首都北京的象征性建筑之一。

特别提醒

古代中国人相信天圆地方之说。在天坛，圆与方的形象被大量运用。天坛内外两道围墙是上圆下方；圜丘三层平台皆为圆形，而其外两层矮墙是内圆外方；祈年殿建筑与台基为圆形，而其外院墙为方形。此种方圆手法，在天坛里许多地方都可见到。

天坛里“九”这个数字及其倍数被反复使用。祈年殿是祈求丰年之地，所用数

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

字多与农业有关。如象征一年四季的“四”，一年十二个月的“十二”，二十四节气的“二十四”，在天坛里也被反复使用。

主要景点

主线景点

圜丘坛：天心石，燔柴炉，铁燎炉，望灯杆
天库：琉璃门
皇穹宇
东、西配殿：九龙柏，回音壁，三音石，对话石
丹陛桥：具服台
祈谷坛
祈年殿：丹陛石雕，天象大柱，龙凤石，宝座及牌位
祈谷坛东、西配殿
皇乾殿

西线景点

斋宫
无梁大殿：斋戒铜人石亭，乾隆大钟
双环万寿亭
神乐署
牺牲所

东线景点

长廊：七星石
神厨、神库：甘泉井

周边名胜

中华民族园
北京动物园
北京海洋馆
中华世纪坛
中山公园
日坛公园
中国科学技术馆
北海
景山公园
雍和宫
地坛公园



教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

孔庙、孔府、孔林
Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion

Natural Features

Qufu in Shandong Province is the hometown of Confucius (551 ~ 479 BC) who is a great thinker, statesman and educator in China's history, and founder of the Confucian school of philosophy, which is the ideological root of all varieties of Chinese culture. Its position in the making of Chinese nationality and culture is never surpassed for 2 000 years. Qufu, admired by all rulers and intellectuals in history, has numerous cultural sites, among which the most famed are Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion.



The Confucian Temple is in the center of Qufu City. It was built in 478 BC. There are still 466 halls, pavilions and other rooms intact, covering a total area of 21.8 hectares. Repeated improvement and expansion has turned the temple into a palatial complex with nine rows of courtyards.

The Great Accomplishment Hall, the major structure of the temple, is 33 meters tall. It is roofed with yellow glazed tiles and has octagonal eaves. The front 10 stone columns are carved with dragons. In addition to a statue of Confucius, the hall also houses stone inscription of the Ming Dynasty, which tells the life story of Confucius in 120 pictures, as well as a great deal of stone tablets.

The Confucian Family Mansion, right next to the Confucian Temple, was the residence of Confucius' descendants and also the residence just next to the imperial palace in scale. It covers 16 hectares with 463 rooms. The family mansion now houses a large number of documents, files and cultural relics.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The color of the roof tiles of the mansion is elegant gray. The front part of the mansion is the Office Quarter, while the rear quarter is the family residence and garden. The mansion is famous for not only the numerable cultural treasures but also the Kong Family's Mansion Banquet, which it is said, follows a menu with quite a few imperial dishes for the emperor.

The Confucian Cemetery, occupying more than 200 hectares, has served as the family graveyard of Confucius and his descendants for more than 2 300 years.

Cemetery of Confucius is situated in the suburb north of Kong Family Mansion. It is the largest artificial cemetery in China, with a perimeter of over a dozen kilometers. It is also the most intact and the oldest survivor of family graveyards.

Together, the Confucian Temple, Confucian Family Mansion and Cemetery were inscribed in World Heritage List in 1994.

Special Mention

There is a popular saying in China that "South China raises talents while North China creates Saints". It is absolutely true indeed. The saints from north include Confucius, Mencius, Kong Ji, Zeng Shen, and Duke of Zhou, who were all came from Qufu, Shandong Province.

Major Scenic Sites

1. Temple of Confucius

Entrance

Archway of Striking Golden Bell and Beating Jade: Dismounting Stele

Lingxing Gate: Archway of Supreme Harmony and Vigor
Archway of Temple of Ultimate Sage
Archway of Pervading Virtues and Archway of Succeeding Doctrines

Gate of Sage Time: Bridges of Jade River
Gate of Glimpse and Gate of Eminence

Gate of Enhancing Morals

Great Mean Gate

Kuiwen Pavilion: Chenghua Steles

Hall of Abstinence

Thirteen Stele-Pavilions: East Flowery Gate and West Flowery Gate

Dacheng Gate

Apricot Altar

Ceremonial Quarter

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Dacheng Hall
East and West Side Verandas
Residence Hall
The Sage Exhibition Hall
West and East Tour Routes

2. Kong Family Mansion

Office Quarter

Main Gate
East and West Wing-rooms
Second Gate
Gate of Glory: Six Halls
Grand Hall: Premier's Stool
Stone Stele inside Second Gate
Second Hall
Third Hall

Private Residence Quarter

Forbidden Gate: Wall of Cupidity
Front Main Hall
Front Tower
Rear Tower
Mansion Garden

3. Cemetery of Confucius

Divine Avenue
Cemetery Gate
Second Gate
Zhushui Bridge
Memorial Hall
Confucius' Tomb
Tomb of Kong Li
Tomb of Kong Ji
Zigong's Shelter for Keeping Watch on the Tomb: Pavilions of Royal Stop
Tomb of Kong Shang-ren: Archway of Mr Yu

Other Attractions Around the Place

Zhougong Temple
Yan Temple

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Shaohao Tomb
The Birth Place of Emperor Huangdi in Shouqiu
Nishan Ancient Constructions
Mountain Jiulong Han Dynastry Tombs

孔庙、孔府、孔林
Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion

自然概况

山东曲阜是中国历史上伟大的思想家、政治家、教育家、儒家学派的创始人孔子(公元前 551 ~ 479)的故里。中国悠久灿烂的汉文化,其思想根源都可追溯到先秦孔学。孔子在塑造中国民族性格和传统文化上的历史地位,两千年来无人可及。曲阜作为历代帝王、文人名士仰慕的地方,遗留下大量的文物古迹,其中最著名的是孔庙、孔林、孔府。



孔庙位于曲阜市中心,建于公元前 478 年。全庙共有厅、堂、楼、轩等各式建筑 466 间,其总面积约 21.8 公顷。数十次的重修、扩建,使孔庙成为一组拥有九进院落、规模宏大的古建筑群。

孔庙的正殿大成殿高 31 米,殿脊为黄色琉璃瓦,八角形殿檐。殿前十根石柱上雕有龙图。除孔子塑像外,殿内还有明朝时期立的石碑。石碑上的 120 副图画讲述了孔子的生平。此外,殿内还有大量的石匾。

孔府紧靠孔庙,是孔子的后代子孙们居住的地方,规模上仅次于皇宫。孔府占地 16 公顷,有厅、堂、楼、轩等各式建筑 463 间。府内收藏大量的历史档案、文件和文物。

孔府是用雅致庄重的灰瓦建造的。孔府,前部为官衙三堂,后为内宅和孔府花园。在这儿,不仅可以看到大量珍贵文物,还可品尝著名的孔府宴,据说其中多种

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

菜食是当年皇帝的御膳。

孔林占地200公顷之多，是孔子及其后裔延用了2 300多年的家族墓地。孔林位于孔府以北的城郊，周长十几公里，是中国最大的一座人造陵园，也是保存年代最长、最完整的一座氏族古墓园。

孔庙、孔林、孔府于1994年被列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

特别提醒

人常说："江南出才子，江北出圣人。"此话十分正确。其中，所谓江北的圣人即包括至圣孔子、亚圣孟子、复圣颜子、述圣子思、宗圣曾子、元圣周公，他们大都出自山东曲阜。

主要景点

1. 孔庙

前导区

金声玉振坊：下马碑

棂星门：太和元气坊，至圣庙坊，"德侔天地，道冠古今"坊

圣时门：壁水桥，快睹门、仰高门

弘道门　　大中门

奎文阁：成化碑　　斋宫

十三碑亭：东华门、西华门

大成门　　杏坛

祭祀区

大成殿　　两庑

寝殿　　圣迹殿

孔庙西路/东路

2. 孔府

官衙

大门　　东西厢房

二门　　重光门：六大厅

大堂：阁老凳，二门东首石碑

二堂　　三堂

内宅

禁门：贪壁　　前上房

前堂楼院　　后堂楼院

孔府花园

3. 孔林

神道　　大林门

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

二林门　　洙水桥
享殿　　孔子墓
孔鲤墓　　孔伋墓
子贡庐墓处:驻跸亭　　孔尚任墓:于氏坊

周边名胜

周公庙　　颜庙
少昊陵　　寿丘黄帝诞生地
尼山古代建筑群　　九龙山汉墓群



周口店——《北京人》遗址
Beijing Man Site

Natural Features

On December 2nd 1929, a Chinese paleoanthropologist named Pei Wenzhong discovered a complete skull of "Peking Man" on Dragon Bone Hill northwest of Zhoukoudian village, in the southwest suburbs of Beijing.

Later, archaeologists unearthed 40-odd individually fossilized skeletons of "Peking Man", male, female, old and young, all at the same site. Zhoukoudian, therefore, became the most common site for human remains with the most abundant fossils in the world from the same period. The discovery pushed the history of Beijing's civilization back to some 600 000 years. These fossilized remains prove that "Peking Man" was primitive man in an evolutionary process from ancient ape to modern man, and is the ancestor of the Chinese nation.

About 600 000 years ago, living on the plain here were tigers, leopards, deer, bovines, and beavers. For safety against these animals and shelter, Peking Man chose the limestone caves. At that time, Peking Man had a lower and flat forehead, bold superciliary ridges, high cheekbones, and a protruding mouth. He already walked straight-up, was capable of making tools, began production, and had his language. Then at 4 o'clock (pm) on December 2 of 1929, Pei Wenzhong, an anthropologist of China, discovered an intact skull of Peking Man, in a big cave on the north slope of Dragon Bone Hill at Zhoukoudian, and this Peking

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

Man site was soon known globe wide.



The discovery of Peking Man Site at Zhoukoudian is regarded as the most valuable contribution in the 20th century to paleoanthropology. It advanced human history for tens of thousands years earlier, and so far it is still the world's most intact, the richest, and the most convincing remains of the primitive man's activities, which strongly proves that "man originated from apes" and which provides the most precious first-hand evidences for the study of human origin and evolution as well as for reproducing the life of the earliest man.

Apart from Peking Man Site, around Zhoukoudian are also discovered about 20 other sites with fossils of New Cave Man about 100 000 years ago and fossils of Upper Cave Man about 18 000 years ago, as well as fossils of other vertebrates. Together they form a natural museum of the history of human beings and other living things.

Zhoukoudian is known world wide as the home of Peking Man. In 1953, Zhoukoudian Museum was open to the public, and the site was brought under the state protection as a key historic site by the State Council. In 1987, UNESCO inscribed the Peking Man Site at Zhoukoudian in the World Heritage List as a cultural heritage of the world.

Special Mention

Human fossils at Zhoukoudian are found mainly at three places, representing the three stages of human evolution, namely from homoerectus, early Homo sapiens, to later Homo sapiens. Paleolithic stonewares are found in 6 sites that belong to different developmental stages of Paleolithic culture. It is indeed a rare underground treasure house, for in a fairly small area hidden so many human fossils with so rich a content. The discovery of Beijing Man's skull entitles Zhoukoudian as a world famous cradle of early human beings, where in the long ancient times lived the Beijing Men 700 000 to 200 000 years ago, the New Cave Men about 100 000 years ago, and the Upper Cave Men about 18 000 years ago.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Major Scenic Sites

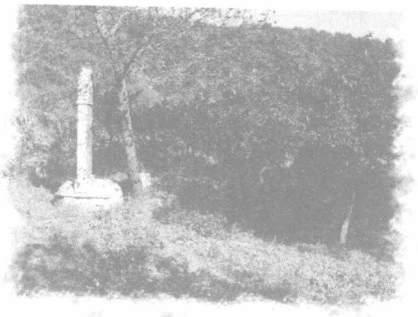
Ape-man Cave
New Cave—Site 4
Zhoukoudian Museum
Upper Cave
Sites 2,9,14,15,24

Other Attractions Around the Place

Lovely scenes on the green Dragon Bone Hill
Site of the Capital of Yan of the West Zhou
Scenic Area of Shihua (Stone Flower) Cave

周口店——《北京人》遗址
Beijing Man Site

自然概况



1929年12月2日，我国人类考古学家裴文中先生在北京西南郊的周口店龙骨山北坡一个大洞穴中，发现了完整的北京猿人头盖骨。

后来，在这同一个地方，考古学家们又发现了40多具“北京人”的骨骼化石，其中有男有女，有老有少。从此，周口店北京猿人遗址闻名于世，这里保存着世界上数量最多的同一时期人类化石。“北京人”的发现将北京的历史向前推进了约60万年。这些化石证实，“北京人”就是处于古代猿人向现代人进化过程中的原始人类，是中华民族的祖先。

60万年前，这里平原辽阔，生长着虎、豹、鹿、牛、河狸等动物。为了躲避风雨和野兽的侵袭，北京猿人便在石灰岩的洞穴中栖身。北京猿人前额低平、眉骨粗壮、颧骨高凸、嘴巴前伸，已能直立行走、制造工具、进行劳动，并有了语言。

周口店北京猿人遗址的发现，被认为是20世纪古人类学研究中最具价值的贡献。它将人类历史的年代推前了数万年，并且它至今仍是目前全球发现最完整、最丰富、最具说服力的古人类活动遗存。它证实了“人是从猿变化而来的”这一事实，为研究人类的起源及其发展，为再现早期人类的生活面貌，提供了极为珍贵的第一

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

手资料。

除北京猿人遗址外，在周口店还发现了距今约 10 万年的“新洞人”化石和约 1.8 万年前的“山顶洞人”化石以及其他脊椎动物化石遗址 20 多处，构成了一个天然的生物史和人类史“博物馆”。

周口店以“中国猿人之家”闻名于世。1953 年，周口店遗址博物馆对外开放；1961 年，周口店遗址被国务院列为全国重点文物保护单位；1987 年，联合国教科文组织将周口店“北京人”遗址作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

周口店附近人类化石有三处，分别代表从直立人到今天的所有三个进化阶段，即直立人、早期智人和晚期智人；六个地点都有旧石器，属于旧石器文化发展的不同时期。在这样一个范围不大的地区内人类化石、旧石器时代文化遗物如此集中、内涵如此丰富多彩，实属罕见，真不愧为地下宝库。“北京人”头盖骨的发现，使周口店成为世界闻名的早期人类发祥地。在漫长的历史岁月中，这里曾生活着距今 70 万年至 20 万年的“北京人”、距今 10 万年左右的“新洞人”和距今 1.8 万年的“山顶洞人”。

主要景点

猿人洞
新洞——第 4 地点
周口店遗址博物馆
山顶洞
第 2，9，14，15，24 地点

周边名胜

周口店龙骨山风景
西周燕都遗址
石花洞风景区



泰山
Mt. Taishan

Natural Features

Mount Taishan, with its main peak rising 1 545 meters above sea level, in central Shandong Province, has, since ancient times, been a mountain held in high esteem by the Chinese people. It is known as the “First of the Five Sa-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

cred Mountains", all situated on the Central Plains of the country. It ranks third among the five mountains in terms of height.



According to historical records, Mount Taishan became a sacred place haunted by emperors to offer sacrifices and meditate in the Zhou Dynasty over 1 000 years before the Christian era. A total of 72 emperors were recorded as visiting it. Men of letters also came to acquire inspiration, to compose poems, write essays, paint and take pictures. Hence, a great many cultural relics were left on the mountain.

Mt Taishan has a long history, ancient geological stratum, graceful scenery, and a wealth of cultural relics and sites. Apart from others, those that have been admired with a name amount to 112 peaks, 98 cliffs, 18 caverns, 58 weird crags, 102 streams, 56 ponds and falls, and 64 mountain springs, in addition to 22 ancient temples, 97 primeval sites, 819 stone steles, and 1 018 cliff inscriptions.

Mt Taishan has rich biological resources. All over the mountain are ancient trees and flourishing grass, and the vegetation covers 79.9% of the area. The zonal vegetation is warm-temperate deciduous broad-leaved forest, with a diverse flora comprising 989 species of seed plants in 144 families. Trees that are over 100 year old exceed 10 000 in number.

Mt Taishan was always the symbol of monarchy in history. It was a sacred mountain to the kings and emperors, who would all came to offer their Fengshan Sacrifice ceremony, a gratitude worship to the heaven and earth the moment they assumed the crown or in the year of peace and abundant harvest. Before Qin Dynasty altogether 72 kings or emperors had their Fengshan ceremonies at Mt Taishan, and from Qin Dynasty to Ming and Qing Dynasty emperors of all times had 27 such worship ceremonies at this mountain. As the only one of the mountains in China that enjoyed this honor from the emperors, Mt Taishan is naturally rich with

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

historical and cultural traces.

Mt Taishan is a microcopy of the thousands years old civilization of China that contains a cultural wealth no other mountain in the world is comparable. Just like the Great Wall, Yellow River, and Yangtze River, Mt Taishan is now the symbol of Chinese people.

In December of 1987, UNESCO inscribed Mt Taishan on the World Heritage List as both a natural and a cultural property of the whole world.

Special Mention

From the town of Tai'an at the mountain foot about 150m above sea level, up to Mediate Heaven Gate 847m above sea level, then atop the summit Jade Emperor Summit 1 545m above sea level, the peaks along and around the way rise and roll to contrast the summit with a rhythm from restraint to released as well as a lofty expanse that belittle all other mountains. Emperor Wu of Han Dynasty was so overwhelmed on his visit that he said, "Mt. Taishan is so high, extremely high; so big, unusually big; so magnificent, very conspicuous; so daunting and so amazing."

Mt. Taishan wonders include: Brilliant Sunrise; Jade Plate of Cloud Sea; Pure Rime; Buddha's Halo; Rosy Sunset.

Major Scenic Sites

"Imperial Road" tour route: Red Gate Palace
All Fairies Tower
Goddess Doumu Palace
Sutra Rock Valley
Mediate Heaven Gate
Eighteen Bends
South Heaven Gate

West tour route: Tianwai Village
Dragon Pond Reservoir
Jiandai Bridge
Sesame Oil Valley
White Dragon Pond
Horse Hoof Ravine
Heaven Obedient Bridge
Heavenward Bridge
Yellow Inkstone Ridge

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The foot zone of Mt Taishan: Temple to Heavenly Queen Mother
Tiger Mountain Park
Universal Light Temple
General Feng Yu-xiang's Tomb

Heaven Candle Peak tour zone: Rear Rock Basin
Jade Spring Temple
Heaven Candle Peak

Divine Rock Temple tour zone

Fan Cliff tour zone

Peach Blossom Ravine tour zone

Other Attractions Around the Place

Dai Temple
The remains of the ancient State Qi Great Wall
Qufu—Confucius's birthplace

泰山
Mt. Taishan

自然概况

雄峙于山东省中部，主峰海拔1 545米的泰山自古以来就受到中国人的景仰。它享有“五岳之首”、“五岳独尊”的称誉。从高度来说，它在五座山岳中排行第三。



根据史料记载，泰山之所以成为一座神圣的山，就是因为在公元1 000多年前的周朝有众多的君王曾来这里献祭朝拜。记载中共有72位君王来过这里。众多文人墨客也到这里来寻找灵感，吟诗作句，写文作画，摄影创作。因此，泰山上留下了大量的文化遗迹。

泰山历史悠久，地层古老，风光秀丽，文物古迹众多。泰山自古被命名的有山

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

峰112座、崖岭98座、岩洞18处、奇石58块、溪谷102条、潭池瀑布56处、山泉64眼。此外，还有古寺庙22处，古遗址97处，历代碑纂819块，摩崖石刻1 018处。

泰山有丰富的生物资源，山上古木参天，花草繁茂，植被覆盖率达79.9%。地带性植被类型为暖温带落叶阔叶林，现有种子植物144科、989种，百年以上的古树名木万余株。

历史上泰山是政权的象征，是一座神圣的山。古代帝王登基之初或逢太平之岁，都要来泰山举行封禅大典，祭告天地。先秦时期有72代君王到泰山封禅；自秦汉至明清，历代皇帝到泰山封禅也多达27次。这为泰山留下了其他山所不及的丰富历史文化印迹。

泰山是我国几千年古老文明的缩影，它蕴含的文化内涵，在世界范围内没有第二座山可以与之相媲美，它和万里长城、黄河、长江一样，成为中华民族的象征。1987年12月，泰山被联合国教科文组织作为文化和自然双重遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

从海拔150米的山麓泰安城至海拔847米的中天门、海拔1 460米的南天门和海拔1 545米的玉皇顶，沿途群峰起伏，主峰突起，形成由抑到扬的节奏感和“一览众山小”的高旷气势。汉武帝登泰山赞曰：“泰山高矣、极矣；大矣、特矣；壮矣、赫矣；骇矣、惑矣。”

泰山奇观包括：旭日东升、云海玉盘、雾凇雨凇、泰山佛光、晚霞夕照。

主要景点

登山御道旅游线：红门宫，万仙楼，斗母宫，经石峪，中天门，十八盘，南天门

登山西路旅游线：天外村，龙潭水库，建岱桥，香油湾，白龙池，马蹄峪，顺天桥，通天桥，黄砚岭

岱麓环山旅游线：王母池，虎山公园，普照寺，冯玉祥墓

天烛峰旅游线：后石坞，玉泉寺，天烛峰

灵岩寺旅游区

扇子崖风景区

桃花峪风景区

周边名胜

岱庙　　齐长城遗址

曲阜——孔子的故乡

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

平遥古城
The Ancient City of Pingyao

Natural Features



Pingyao is a small town in central Shanxi Province whose history goes back 2 700 years, when it was first built during the reign of King Xuan (827 ~ 782BC) of the Western Zhou Dynasty. Since the "Province and County System" by Emperor Qin in 221 BC, the city has been the county seat in all the times. Despite so many events or incidents, it survived practically as it was in the 600 years or more since Ming and Qing dynasties, and ranks as the only intact ancient city of Ming and Qing dynasties well preserved in China.

The city wall stretches for about six kilometers. The town is protected by a city moat, both three meters deep and wide. Outside the city gate is a drawbridge. Within the city, four big streets and eight small streets radiate to join with 72 lanes.

Preserved in the ancient city are near 4 000 traditional quadrangle residences of common people, over 400 of which are fairly intact, in addition to the few even more cherished houses of Ming Dynasty and those rare proto-types of Yuan Dynasty. These shelters are typical of northern China and Shanxi province, specifically with the following features: 1. Perfect combination of cave dwelling and quadrangle courtyard; 2. Rectangle layout with an enclosed but elaborate space; 3. Mostly shed or flat roofed; 4. Grand courtyard as a whole but elegant inside; 5. Carefully observing Chinese geomancy as well as other customs.

So many ancient houses, city walls, streets, lanes as well as other cultural sites of Ming and Qing Dynasties are so perfectly preserved in Pingyao City that it is really the only prototype found in areas of Han people in China.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

In 1986, State Council announced the city as a state city of history and culture, and in December of 1997 UNESCO inscribed it on "World Heritage List" with their consideration that " The Ancient City of Ping Yao is an outstanding example of a Han Chinese city of the Ming and Qing Dynasties (14th ~ 20th centuries) that has retained all its features to an exceptional degree and in doing so provides a remarkably complete picture of cultural, social, economic, and religious development during one of the most seminal periods of Chinese history. "

Special Mention

There are the great and grandiose city wall, Hall of 10 000 Buddhas of Nation Defending (Zhengguo) Temple recognized as the No. 3 most precious wood structure in China, Twin Trees Temple honored as " the treasure house of painted sculpture of ancient China", Dacheng (Supreme Success) Hall of Confucius Temple built in Song and Jin Dynasties, Rishengchang Draft Bank claimed as " China's No. 1 financial institution" and Qingxu Temple of Taoism with the structure of " hanging beams and pillars" rare in ancient buildings.

Major Scenic Sites

Ancient city wall and the moat
A shopping street from Ming and Qing Dynasties
Museum of Draft Banks
City Tower
An ancient Escort Agency
Museum of Lacquer Art
Town God Temple
County Office
Confucius Temple
Traditional Quadrangles
Twin Trees Temple
Nation Defending Temple

Other Attractions Around the Place

Mianshan Mountain
Wang's Mansion

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

平遥古城
The Ancient City of Pingyao

自然概况



位于山西省中部的平遥古城是一座具有2 700多年历史的文化名城。平遥古城始建于西周宣王时期(前827～前782)。自公元前221年,秦实行"郡县制"以来,平遥城一直是县治所在地,一直延续至今。平遥古城历尽沧桑,但自明清以来的六百多年间,平遥城市面积和布局基本未变,成为迄今为止国内保存最完整的一座明清时期的古代县城。

平遥古城墙绵延约6公里。整个城市由一条深3米、宽3米的护城壕围护,城门外面有一座吊桥。古城内,4条大街和8条小街纵横交错,连接着72条小巷。

平遥古城内现今保存有近4 000处传统的四合院民居,它们大多有百年以上的历史,其中有400余处保存得相当完好,还有少部分为明代和罕见的元代民居,十分珍贵。这些古民居具有典型的汉民族北方民居特点,又是三晋地区民居的典型代表,其特色表现在以下几个方面:(1)是地上窑洞与四合院的完美结合;(2)有狭长的平面布局和封闭但极为丰富的院落空间;(3)屋顶多为单坡和平顶相结合;(4)民居院落整体形态为外雄内秀;(5)民居中体现了丰富的中国传统风水和其他民俗内容。

平遥古城如此众多的明清时期民居和古城墙,古街,古巷等其他古迹能完好地保存至今,是极为罕见、弥足珍贵的孤例。

1986年,平遥古城被国务院公布为国家级历史文化名城。1997年12月被联合国科教文组织列入《世界遗产名录》,世界遗产委员会对其的评价是:平遥古城是中国汉民族城市在明清时期的杰出范例,平遥古城保存了其所有特征,而且在中国历史发展中,为人们展示了一幅非同寻常的文化、社会、经济及宗教发展的完整画卷。

特别提醒

规模宏大、气势雄伟的古城墙

排名我国现存最珍贵的木结构建筑第三的镇国寺万佛殿

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

誉为“中国古代彩塑艺术宝库”的双林寺
文庙大成殿
誉为“天下第一号”的“日升昌”票号
古建筑中罕见的“悬梁吊柱”结构的清虚观

主要景点

古城墙及护城河　　明清商业街
票号博物馆　　市楼
古镖局　　漆器艺术馆
城隍庙　　县衙署
文庙　　传统四合院民居
双林寺　　镇国寺

周边名胜

绵山　　王家大院



大同云冈石窟
Yungang Grottoes in Datong City

Natural Features

Yungang Grottoes was carved on the north cliff of Wuzhou Mountain, 16km west of Datong City, Shanxi Province. The caves were carved in the mid-5th century, North Wei Dynasty, stretching about 1km from east to west as one of the largest clusters of grottoes in China. With an enormous size and rich contents, Yungang Grottoes ranks side by side with Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang of Gansu Province and Longmen Grottoes in Luoyang of Henan Province as the three great clusters of cave temples in China.

Of the three, Yungang Grottoes stands out for its rich contents and refined carving. Preserved to the present in the Grottoes are 53 caves and over 51 000 statues. Yungang grottoes consists of three sections, the east, the west, and the central, with caves of all sizes pleasantly scattered half way on Yungang Mountain. Caves in the east section feature in pagodas, thus called pagoda caves. Those of the central section were all structured with a front and a rear chamber, with the

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

Buddha in the center and relief carving all over the walls. Caves of the west section are mostly medium or small sized, or small niches added in later times, actually, in most cases, carved after the capital of North Wei Dynasty was moved from Datong to Luoyang.



On the interior and exterior walls as well as the Buddha's halos and the caisson ceilings of the caves, there are vividly carved groups of apsaras to manifest the world of ultimate happiness pursued by Buddhists. All the statues are modeled with marvelous personification that gives the Buddha a human nature and expression as well as infinite vigor as the ancient treasure of Chinese culture.

In December of 2001, World Heritage Committee of UNESCO inscribed Yungang Grottoes in its World Heritage List.

Special Mention

Yungang Grottoes is made up of three sections: Caves 1 to 4 are the east section, Caves 5 to 13 the central section, and Caves 14 to 45 the west section. As a convention, the tour
usually begins from Caves 5 of the central section, one by one to Cave 45, then Caves 1 to 4 of the east section. Among all the caves, the five by Tan Yao are the most grand and majestic, whereas Cave 5, Cave 6, and Wuhua Caves are most colourful and rich in content as the cream of the art of Yungang Grottoes. Caves of the east and west sections are works of a later time.

Major Scenic Sites

Caves 5 and 6 of the central section
Caves 7 and 8 of the central section
Wuhua Caves
Cave 15—Cave of Ten Thousand Buddhas of the west section
Five caves by Tan Yao—Caves 16, 17, 18, 19 and 20 of the west section
Caves 1 and 2 of the east section

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Other Attractions Around the Place

Huayan Temple	Shanhua Temple
Mt. Hengshan	Suspended Temple
Nine-dragon Wall	Hall of Avalookitesvara
Beiyue Temple	The Great Mosque
Vocano Sites of Datong	Nine Dragon Wall of Datong
Site of Pingcheng	Drum Tower
Jueshan Temple	Wood Tower of Yingxian County



大同云冈石窟
Yungang Grottoes in Datong City

自然概况

大同云冈石窟坐落在山西省大同市以西16公里处的武周山北崖，开凿于公元5世纪中叶的北魏时期。洞窟依山开凿，东西绵延一公里，是中国最大的石窟群之一，其规模之巨大、雕刻内容之丰富，令人叹为观止。与甘肃敦煌莫高窟、河南洛阳龙门石窟并列为中国三大石窟。

在中国三大石窟中，云冈石窟以内容丰富、雕刻精细而著称。云冈石窟现存洞窟53个、造像5.1万余尊，规模宏大。云冈石窟分为东、中、西三部分，大、中、小窟疏密有致地嵌贴在云冈半腰中。东部的石窟多以造塔为主，故又称塔洞；中部的石窟每个部分为前后两室，主佛居中，洞壁和洞顶布满了浮雕；西部石窟则以中小窟和补刻的小佛龛为最多，修建的时代略晚，大多是北魏迁都洛阳之后的作品。

云冈石窟的内壁、外壁、佛光、藻井等都刻有成群的“飞天”形象，非常生动活泼，展示了佛教徒所幻想的极乐世界。这里的佛像，都采用拟人的高超手法，富于人的天性和表情，具有无限的活力，不愧为中华文明的古老珍宝。

2001年12月，联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会将云冈石窟作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

云冈石窟分成东区、中区和西区三大部分。第1至4窟为东部，第5至13窟为中部，第14至45窟为西部。传统的参观路线是先从中部的第5窟开始参观一直到第45窟，然后再参观云冈石窟东部的第1至第4窟。众多的洞窟

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

中以昙曜五窟气势最为雄伟。第5、第6窟和五华洞内容丰富多彩，是云冈石窟艺术的精华。东部和西部窟群属于晚期作品。

主要景点

云冈中部的第五、第六窟
云冈中部的第七、第八窟
五华洞
云冈西部的第十五窟万佛洞
云冈西部的昙曜五窟——第十六、十七、十八、十九、二十窟
云冈东部的第一、第二窟

周边名胜

华严寺
恒山
九龙壁
北岳庙
大同火山群
平城遗址
觉山寺
善化寺
悬空寺
观音堂
清真大寺
大同九龙壁
鼓楼
应县木塔



教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

哈尔滨国际冰雪节和哈尔滨冰雪大世界
Harbin International Ice Festival and Harbin Ice and Snow World

Natural Features

Harbin International Ice Festival

The Harbin Ice Festival, started in 1985, is held annually from January 5 and lasts for over one month. Harbin is the capital city of Heilongjiang Province and this is China's original and greatest ice artwork festival, attracting hundreds of thousands of local people and visitors from all over the world.



The city's location in northeast China accounts for its arctic climate which provides abundant natural ice and snow. Subsequently, the "Ice City" of Harbin is recognized as the cradle of ice and snow art in China and is famous for its exquisite and artistic ice and snow sculptures. The fabulous Ice Lantern Festival was the forerunner of the current festival and is still the best beloved part of the overall event in the opinion of all who come to Harbin each year.

The first Ice lanterns were a winter-time tradition in northeast China. People made ice lanterns and put them outside their houses or gave them to children to play with during some of the traditional festivals. Thus the ice lantern began its long history of development. With novel changes and immense advancement in techniques, today we can marvel at the various delicate and artistic ice lanterns on display.

Nowadays, ice lantern in broad sense refers to a series of plastic arts using ice

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

and snow as raw material combining ice artworks with colored lights and splendid music. The specific patterns of ice lantern include ice and snow sculptures, ice flowers, ice architectures and so on.

Harbin Ice Festival provides the visitors each year a whole new world of ice and snow. The best collections of ice artworks are exhibited in three main places: the Sun Island Park, Harbin Ice and Snow World, and Zhaolin Park.

Today, Harbin Ice Festival is not only an exposition of ice and snow art, but also an annual cultural event for international exchange. Every year, there are many ice sculpture experts, artists and fans from America, Canada, Japan, Singapore, Russia, China, etc. gathering in Harbin to participate ice sculpting competitions and to communicate with each other in the ice and snow world. Also, Harbin ice lanterns have been exhibited in most of China's main cities as well as in many countries in Asia, Europe, North America, Africa and Oceania. For more than 40 years, Harbin's natural resource of ice and snow has been fully explored to provide joy and fun for visitors to the city. Now during the festival, many sporting competitions are also popular including ice-skating, sledding and so on. Weddings, parties and other entertainments are now very much a feature of this ice world, adding their own contribution to the celebrations of this great festival of art, culture, sports and tourism.

Harbin Ice and Snow World

First set-up by the Harbin Municipal Government in 1999, Harbin Ice and Snow World is by far the largest ice and snow art exhibition in the world. It is commonly referred to as possessing four of the key "mosts": the most art attractions, the most beautiful night views, the most recreational activities and the most forms of entertainment. Furthermore, the festival is constantly evolving and each year brings with it a new theme, providing visitors with a totally unique experience from one year to the next.

The ice carvings at the Harbin Ice and Snow World are regarded as some of the world's finest examples of ice art, with visitors able to admire some of the largest and most majestic ice-sculpted masterpieces. Each of these ice carvings are designed in some way related to the festival's theme, enabling travelers to sample a variety of cultural flavors. For example, in its first year the festival's layout was designed around the idea of "Prosperous China and High-flying Longjiang", with the ice carvings depicting the rapid development of the country. In 2005, the theme was "Friendship between China and Russia", with all the sculptures fashioned in a

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

typical Russian style. Among them were replicas of some of Russia's most famous architecture, such as the East Palace, and Moscow's Red Square.

One of the highlights for any visitor to the festival is to visit the site at night when multicolored lights set underground illuminate the sculptures, revealing a whole new colorful dimension to the exhibits. The contrasts of the bright and dazzling lights against the dark night sky make the works look all the more spectacular.

Harbin Ice and Snow World is also a centre for various forms of recreation and entertainment, with a variety of opportunities on offer. Visitors will be amazed by the magnificent ice buildings, including an ice maze, ice bar, and even an ice hotel. If you are a fan of snow sports, then there is also the chance to participate in activities such as ice rock-climbing, skating, skiing, sliding, snow fights, ice golf, and ice archery. In addition to all this, special performances based on the festival theme are put on throughout the event which will no doubt greatly entertain those in search of something a little less physically-demanding.

Understandably, the best time to travel to Harbin is during the winter. The Harbin Ice Festival is held either in late December or in early January, and for those who dream of a proper winter experience, Harbin Ice and Snow World is the place to make those dreams become a reality.

Special Mention

Zhaolin Park is a "must see" during the Harbin Ice Festival because it has a traditional program that shows the most excellent ice lanterns. With water, lights and the natural ice from the Songhua River running through Harbin as the material, the ice lanterns are made by freezing water, piling up ice or snow, then carving, enchasing, decorating, etc. The ice lantern park touring activities have been held here annually since 1963 and is said to be one of the most wonderful 35 tourist attractions in China. There are numerous pieces of ice artworks in the park arranged in groups according to different themes depicting Chinese classic masterworks, European folktales and customs and so on. A great variety of objects such as buildings, gardens, flowers, waterfalls, European-styled churches, lions, tigers, dragons are carved from ice. In the daytime, the ice sculptures are magnificent and verisimilitude. Moreover, with the interspersion of the sparkling colored lights embedded in the sculptures at night, the park becomes a glorious and amazing ice world.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Major Scenic Sites

1. Sun Island Scenic Area

Being famous both home and abroad, the Sun Island Scenic Area lies on the north bank of the Songhua River. This dainty area, surrounded by blue water, boasts crystal lakes, wooden rockeries, beautiful flowers and exotic buildings. In summer, the comfortable weather makes it the first choice to avoid summer heat, and in winter, the spot is a paradise for ice-snow travel. Every year, the Harbin International Snow Sculpture Art Expo held here exhibits enthralling ice or snow sculptures and architectures, attracting thousands of visitors.



Covering an area of 3 800 hectares (9 390 acres), this scenic area consists of the Sun Island and some other small islands. The area, with more than twenty scenic spots, can be divided into three parts. Animals' world is located in the north and west. The centre of the garden is featured by flowers, lakes and ice-snow beauty. And in the south, ice and snow series, exotic Russian series, a gallery and a memorial garden can be found. The amazing Sun Gate is composed of five white ellipse gates, with four small gates on the sides and a big one in the center. In front of the gate lies the symbol of the scenery—a tremendous stone named the Sun Stone.

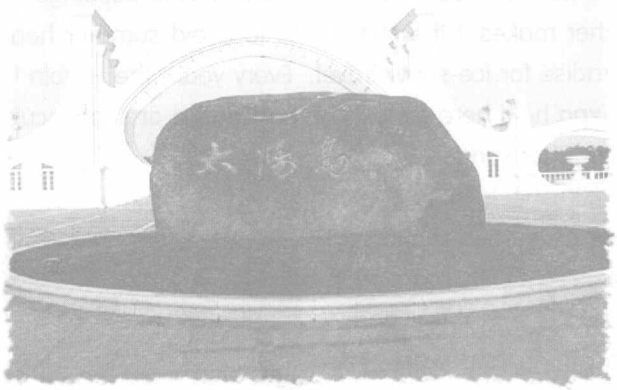
The Deer Garden, the Swan Lake and the Squirrel Island in the north and west make the zone an animal's world. The Deer Garden is like a natural painting: some spotted deer run or walk on the slope while the others drink water from the stream. Facilities like slides, swings and the labyrinth lead children to a wonderland. In the Squirrel Island, visitors can feed the lovely squirrels in person. Near the Squirrel Island, elegant black swans, whooper swans, tundra swans, mandarin ducks, swan geese and other aquatic birds are fostered in the Swan Lake. With a man-made karst cave, the flying Sun Waterfall is near the paradise of animals.

Interestingly, the Flower Garden near the Sun Gate is divided into twelve parts according to the signs of the zodiac. Walking clockwise from north to south, every visitor can find out his own constellation in the garden. Twelve breeds of cloves in the Clove Garden blossom from May to July, driving birds to sing for them.

The Ice Sculpture Garden recaptures many awarded works in the Harbin International Snow Sculpture Art Expo. With an area of 5 000 square meters (1.23 acres), the Ice and Snow Art Hall is the largest indoor one in the world. Exquisitely

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

carved snow and ice works can be appreciated even in hot summer. Ice and Snow Culture Exhibition Hall provides detailed information for those who are fond of snow and ice.



The picturesque Cloud-water Gloriette is a must-see scenery spot. This gloriette relies on the Sun Lake and has two storeys on the water. In the gloriette, visitors get a whole view of the lake and the Sun Hill while breeze gently brushes their faces. In the center of the Sun Island, five lakes surround an isle and connect the Sun Hill. Weeping willows and the gloriette reflect in the clear water, making the area more charming. Near the Cloud-water Gloriette, visitors can enjoy the Japanese flavor in the Harbin-Niigata Friendship Garden. This garden is a typical Japanese courtyard featured by streams and a wooden bridge, blooming with flowers in spring and being quiet and graceful in summer.

Exotic Russian series are situated in the south of the Sun Island. Dining in the Russian restaurant, strolling on the Russian style streets and buying some craftworks are unexpected surprise for visitors. The Russian Artist Village shows Russian paintings while a gallery near the Ice and Snow Culture Exhibition Hall displays Chinese paintings. As the largest private collection exhibition hall in China, the Russian Art Exhibition Hall presents many pieces of Russian artworks. Visitors can watch Russian films and dances and listen to the Russian songs in the Russian Royal Golden Theater. In summer, travelers can swim in the Songhua River, and sunbathe or have a picnic on the beach near the scenic area. In winter, skating and playing ice hockey are both good choices.

2. Central Street

Known as the "Eastern Moscow", Harbin has always been regarded as a unique and exotic city. The most exotic place in Harbin is Central Street. As a new comer to Harbin without any idea of where to go, be sure to start your journey at 'Central Street'. This long corridor of European architectural art is the pride of Har-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

bin. It provides an enthralling destination which abounds with history, attracting tourists from home and abroad.



The construction of the Central Street began in 1898. It was called the Chinese Street at its early age and gained its present name in the late 1920s. Originally, the street was opened up by carts used to transport railway supplies. In May, 1924, the Central Street was floored with square stones according to a Russian engineer's design.

Since then it has become a rendezvous of numerous foreign shops, hotels, and bars. Russian leather, British woolen cloth, French perfume, German medicine and plenty more can be found in this fashionable street. In 1997, Harbin government appointed the street as a pedestrian street, which added greater charm to this enchanting location.

Nowadays, with a total length of 1 450 meters (1 586 yards), the Central Street reflects a variety of European style buildings. In total, there are 71 works, some of which are replicas reflecting the European style of architecture. Examples of the Renaissance through to the Baroque Period as well as the Eclecticism to the Modern School can be seen in 13 of these buildings.

The present Jiaoyu Bookstore (Education Bookstore) is the biggest form of Baroque architecture in Harbin and also the mark of the Central Street. The Mod-Er Hotel (formerly the Modern Hotel) and the Daoliqiulin Shop, built in 1906 and 1919 respectively, are fine examples of Art Nouveau architecture. The Fuer Shop (Women and Children's Shop) in 1917 was the former Xiehe Bank. This building reflects classic Renaissance architecture. There are many other exotic and appealing constructions there. All of them are well preserved and continuously play an important role in people's daily life.

The Central Street is a junction where both Harbin's modern and historical civilizations can be seen. It interprets the city perfectly and has witnessed the most brilliant European cultural development for 300 years.

As one of the longest pedestrian streets in Asia, whenever visitors come there, it will open up to them its charming vistas with its profound culture. It has been a

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

comprehensive recreational place combining tourist pleasure with shopping excitement, and annually attracts thousands of visitors.

3. Siberian Tiger Park

As the natural environment becomes worse, many creatures are endangered and some have died out. The Siberian tiger is considered endangered. It is the largest felid in the world and is known as the King of the Forest. In the 1980s, it was listed as one of the first-class national protected animals of China. To preserve this valuable species, the Siberian Tiger Park was built in 1996.

The park is located on the north bank of the Songhua River to the northwest of Harbin, occupying an area of 1 440 000 square meters (355.8 acres). It is the largest natural park for wild Siberian tigers in the world at present. The park enjoys a favorable foundation for ecotourism and splendid scenery and it is an ideal place for holiday and leisure. There are over 500 purebred Siberian tigers here, with 100 visible to visitors. In addition, visitors can also see white tigers, lions, lynx, leopards, and black pumas as well as Bengali tigers.



It is a large park divided into ten areas, including the young tiger area, the mature tiger area, the king tiger area, a walking area and a platform for viewing the tigers. Unlike common zoos, the Siberian Tiger Park exchanges the roles of visitors and animals. Except in the walking area and the platform for viewing the tigers, tourists must take a bus encircled by wire mesh to all the other scenic spots while the tigers roam freely in the fields.

The mature tiger area has an area of 360 000 square meters (89 acres) with 30 unruly Siberian tigers wandering there. The tigers in this area are all about 7 or 8 years old. And in the young tiger area, there are over 40 young lovely, active tigers about 2 years old. Visitors can see them playing and fighting with each other in a pool nearby. Some even younger tigers are kept in the walking area, snuggling together. The park also houses some lions which coexist peacefully with the tigers.

For visitors who love to see exciting activities, the Siberian Tiger Park is also a perfect place. In addition to viewing the tigers walking leisurely in the open-air, visitors can buy poultry or animals to feed them, including ducks, chickens, and even

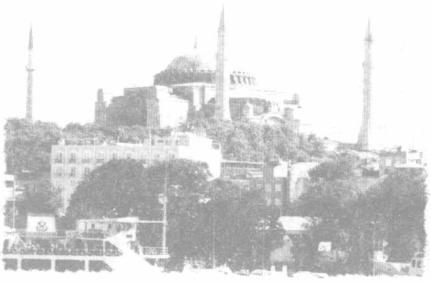
教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

cows. Park employees will set the living animal free among the tigers, and visitors can see the unique live action of tigers preying upon it.

In addition, there is a free Popular Science Exhibition Hall in the Siberian Tiger Park. In the exhibition hall, people can see information on tigers in pictures and samples as well as in words.

4. St. Sophia Church

St. Sophia Church in Harbin is the largest Eastern Orthodox Church in the Far East. It is 53.3 meters (175 feet) high and occupies an area of 721 square meters (0.18 acres). In November, 1996, it was listed as one of the Key Cultural Relics under State Protection. Half a year later, the Harbin City government repaired it and renamed it as Harbin Art Gallery. It is a respectable landmark for Harbiners and for tourism.



St. Sophia Church has a complex history. Shortly after the Boxer Rebellion, the Russian built the church of timber in March, 1907. Then, the Russian rebuilt it using masonry and timber four years later. The onset of a second reconstruction by Russian was marked on September 23rd, 1923, and a ceremony was held to celebrate laying the corner stone. It was completed on November 25th, 1932, after nine years, and was hailed as a monumental work of art.

The Byzantine style church is so beautiful, it is said to look as if it had been made by God's hands. In fact, St. Sophia means 'God's wisdom'. Having a Latin cross footprint, the church's original shape was preserved during reconstruction. The church has four floors and is accessible by a door on each side. Until the 1960's, the bell tower over the entrance housed 7 bells of different sizes and tones.

When there were religious festivals in the past, a well-trained ringer would play musical progressions, tolling the bells with ropes tied to his hands and feet. The bells resounded to the skies.

By the 1990's, St. Sophia had undergone considerable decline. The church no longer was in use, and residential apartments and office buildings surrounded it. Magnificent Russian painted murals that adorned the church's arched walls were destroyed out of recognition.

While in 1997, the Harbin government under took to undo the decades of de-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

terioration. But as the original Russian murals were lost completely, they were replaced by topically new murals depicting the architectural history of the Harbin community. And crosses that were removed in six places were replaced. Now, the murals, pendent lamps, dome and the bell tower are restored to their original splendor.

Other Attractions Around the Place

Yabuli International Ski Resort

The Yabuli International Ski Resort, the biggest and best ski resort in China, is 200 kilometers (124 miles) east of Harbin and 120 kilometers (75 miles) west of Mudanjiang in Shangzhi City, Heilongjiang Province. During the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911), the resort was the hunting ground for feudal lords.

The resort provides great skiing with high mountains and good snow. Local skiers enjoy the high elevation and the fact that the snow is neither too hard nor too powdery. The lowest temperature is - 47.2F. Because of the high elevation, snow falls for a long period of about 170 days. The period from November to late March of the next year is the best time to ski at Yabuli Ski Resort.

The ski resort includes two distinctive areas: the competitive section and the leisure skiing section. The alpine competitive skiing section reaches an altitude of 1 374 meters (approx. 4 508 feet). Built according to international standard, this section provides an excellent environment for professional skiers. In the leisure skiing section, the highest altitude is only about 1 000 meters (approx. 3 281 feet), and the area provides a comparatively safe environment for leisure skiing. There is also a German built slide where tourists can enjoy sliding down from the top of the snowy mountain. Doing skiing on the slide is easy and safe, bringing visitors a thrilling experience.

Yabuli Ski Resort is the biggest training center for alpine skiers and the mountain hosts of many professional skiing competitions. In 1996 the 3rd Winter Asian Games was held here along with numerous the National Winter Games and other national and provincial competitions.

Besides skiing, visitors can also take advantage of the other entertainment facilities at the resort, such as the mini golf course, tennis court, turf courts, hot-air balloons, para-gliders among others. The combination of activities, the beautiful forest and comfortable facilities offer tourists a relaxing and fun vacation. In winter, the ski resort is a fantastic place for skiers; in summer tourists can escape the heat and enjoy fun outdoor activities. All year round the resort offers beautiful scenery.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

哈尔滨国际冰雪节和哈尔滨冰雪大世界
Harbin International Ice Festival and Harbin Ice and Snow World

自然概况

哈尔滨国际冰雪节

哈尔滨国际冰雪节创建于1985年，每年1月5日开幕，持续约一个多月。哈尔滨是黑龙江省省会城市，也是中国最早且最大的冰雪艺术节所在地，每年吸引了成千上万的当地和世界各国的游客。

哈尔滨位于中国东北部，北极气候为该地提供了丰富的自然冰雪，因此，“冰城”哈尔滨被认为是中国冰雪艺术的摇篮，因其精湛的冰雪雕塑艺术而闻名中外。传统的冰灯节是现行冰雪节的前身，对于每年来到哈尔滨的游人而言，冰灯节依然是整个冰雪节中他们最喜欢的部分。

第一次冰灯节来源于中国东北的一个传统。人们制作各式各样的花灯挂在自家房门外或供孩子在一些传统佳节玩耍。因此冰灯就开始了其悠久的发展史。如今，在技术上有了新的变化和进步，人们可以制作和展出各种造型精美且极具艺术性的冰灯。

今天，广义上的冰灯指的是一系列造型艺术。这种艺术使用冰雪作为原料并结合了冰雕艺术的色与光和精彩音乐。冰灯的具体样式包括冰雕、冰花、冰建筑等。

哈尔滨冰雕节每年都会给游客提供一个全新的冰雪世界。冰雕艺术的最佳收藏品主要在三个地方陈列：太阳岛公园、哈尔滨冰雪大世界和兆鳞公园。

今天的哈尔滨冰雪节不仅是一个冰雪艺术的博览会，而且是一年一度的国际文化交流活动。每年都会有许多来自美国、加拿大、新加坡、俄罗斯和中国的冰雕专家、艺术家和冰雕爱好者齐聚哈尔滨参加冰雕大赛，他们在银装素裹的世界里互相交流。此外，哈尔滨的冰灯还会在中国的一些大城市和亚洲、欧洲、北美洲、非洲和大洋洲等一些国家展出。四十多年来，哈尔滨的冰雪资源已被充分开发，给来访的游客提供了无尽的喜悦和乐趣。现在，在节日期间，一些体育比赛项目如滑冰、

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

滑雪等也很受欢迎。婚礼、宴会和其他的娱乐活动如今也成了这个冰雪世界的一大亮点，这些活动为这个盛大的集艺术、文化、体育和旅游为一体的节日盛典做出了自己的贡献。

哈尔滨冰雪大世界

1999 年，哈尔滨冰雪大世界由哈尔滨市政府首次举办，是迄今为止世界上最大的冰雪艺术展览。可以用四个“最”字来形容：最具艺术吸引力、夜景最美、活动最悠闲和娱乐形式最多。而且，冰雪节每年都会推出一个新的主题，让游客有一个全新的感受。

哈尔滨冰雪大世界的冰雕被认为是世界上最美丽的冰雕艺术品，游客可以欣赏到一些最大最庄严的冰雕作品。每一件冰雕作品在一定程度上都是和节日的主题相关的。游客可以品味到各种各样的变化。例如，第一届的冰雕节主题构思就是围绕“繁荣的中国和腾飞的黑龙江”展开的，冰雕作品反映了国家的快速发展。2005 年主题为“中俄友谊”，所有的作品都是俄罗斯风格。其中包括俄罗斯一些著名建筑的复制品如东宫、莫斯科红场。

对于到访的游客而言，夜晚浏览会格外精彩，因为当五颜六色的地下灯光映衬着冰雕作品时，会呈现出种种多姿多彩的多维场景。明亮炫目的光线映衬着黑暗的天空，使每件作品看起来都更加壮观。

哈尔滨冰雪大世界也是各种休闲娱乐活动的中心，场合多种多样。游客会为壮观的如迷宫、冰吧甚至是冰旅馆等冰雪建筑而惊叹。如果你是滑雪运动的热爱者，那么你就会有机会参加如冰岩攀登、滑冰、滑雪、打雪仗、冰高尔夫和冰射箭等活动。除此之外，在整个节日中上演的基于冰雪节题材的一些特殊演出，无疑也会给那些平日里生活平泛的游客带来娱乐兴趣。

毫无疑问，去哈尔滨旅游的最佳时间为冬季。哈尔滨冰雪节在每年的 12 月底或 1 月初举办。对于那些梦想过一个特有意义的冬季的人来说，哈尔滨冰雪大世界无疑会让这些人梦想成真。

特别提醒

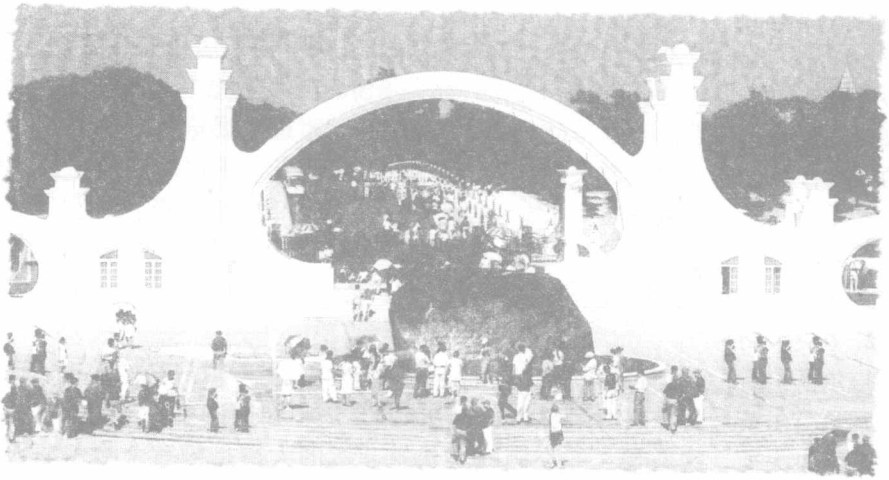
兆麟公园是哈尔滨冰雕节的必游之地。因为那里有传统的节目——冰灯展。用水、灯和取自流经哈尔滨松花江的自然冰作材料，冰灯用冻水、成堆的冰雪然后经过雕刻、镶嵌、装饰而成。冰灯园的游览活动自 1963 年以来每年都举办，据说已被列为中国最美妙的 35 个旅游胜地之一。公园里的许多冰雕作品都是按照不同的题材排列的，这些题材有描述中国经典名著的，还有欧洲民间故事和风俗习惯等。大量的物体如建筑、庭院、鲜花、瀑布、欧式教堂、狮子、老虎和龙都会被用作雕刻原型。白天，冰雕作品壮观而逼真。到了晚上，闪烁的灯光照耀着冰雕作品，整个公园就变成了一个光彩夺目的冰世界。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

主要景点

1. 太阳岛风景区

驰名海内外的太阳岛风景区坐落于松花江北岸。全岛碧水环抱。岛上有水晶湖、木质假山、美丽的鲜花和有着异国情调的建筑，是夏季最佳的避暑胜地，冬季冰雪旅行的天堂。哈尔滨的冰雕艺术展每年在此举办，迷人的冰雪雕刻和建筑吸引了数以万计的游客。



太阳岛占地 3 800 公顷(9 390 英亩)，由太阳岛和其他一些小岛屿组成。景区有二十多个景点，大致分为三个部分。动物世界位于西北部，公园的中心以花、湖和秀丽的冰雪为特色。南部有冰雪系列、俄罗斯异国风情系列、画廊和纪念庭院。令人惊异的太阳门有五个白色的椭圆门、四个偏门和一个位于中间的大门组成。门前摆放着风景区的标志——一块叫做太阳石的巨石。

位于西北部的鹿园、天鹅湖和松鼠岛组成了一个动物世界。鹿园就像是一个自然的画卷，一些鹿在奔跑，一些鹿在悠闲地散步，另一些在小溪旁饮水。滑梯、秋千和迷宫这些娱乐设施能够引领孩子们进入一个绝妙的境地。在松鼠岛，游客可以亲自喂那些可爱的松鼠吃食。在松鼠岛附近的天鹅湖里，喂养着优雅的黑天鹅、大天鹅、寒带天鹅、鸳鸯和其他的一些水禽。动物的天堂附近有一个人造的洞口，太阳瀑布飞流直下。

有趣的是，太阳门附近的鲜花园按照黄道十二宫被划分成十二个部分。从北向南按顺时针方向走，每个游客在庭院里都会找到自己的星座。丁香园里种植的十二种丁香花从五月到七月一直是鲜花盛开，吸引了很多鸟儿来这里高歌。

冰雕园再出了许多曾在哈尔滨国际冰雕艺术节上的获奖作品。冰雪艺术厅占地 5 000 平方米(1.23 英亩)，是世界上最大的一个室内展厅。即使在炎热的夏季也可以欣赏到精美绝伦的冰雕作品。冰雪文化展厅为冰雪迷们提供了详细的信

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

息。

美丽如画的水阁云天是必去的景点。水阁云天是一座依太阳湖而建的两层水面建筑。游客在此可以一览太阳湖和太阳山全貌，并且可以享受微风拂面的惬意。在太阳岛中心，五湖环绕一岛并与太阳山相连。垂柳和水阁云天倒映在清澈的湖水中，使得整个景区更加迷人。在水阁云天附近，游客可以在哈尔滨新宿友谊园里感受日本风情。这是一个典型的日本庭院，以小溪和木桥为特色，春季鲜花盛开，夏季安静优美。

异国风情的俄罗斯系列位于太阳岛的南部，在俄罗斯饭店用完餐后，漫步在俄罗斯风格的大街上，购买一些手工艺品，都会给游客带来意想不到的惊喜。俄罗斯画家村陈列着一些俄国绘画作品，而冰雪文化展厅附近的展览馆则展出了一些中国的绘画作品。作为中国最大的私人收藏展厅，俄罗斯艺术展馆展出了许多俄罗斯艺术作品。游客在俄罗斯皇家金色剧院里可以欣赏俄罗斯电影，唱俄罗斯歌，跳俄罗斯舞。夏季时节，游客可以在松花江游泳，在景区附近的沙滩上晒日光浴、野餐。冬天，滑冰和打冰球是不错的选择。

2. 中央大街

哈尔滨素有“东方莫斯科”之称，是一个独特的、具有异域风情的城市。而中央大街又是哈尔滨最具异国情调的地方。初来哈尔滨不知道该去哪儿的游客一定要去逛逛中央大街。这条长长的充满欧式建筑艺术的大街是每一个哈尔滨人的骄傲。它是一个历史悠久的胜地，吸引着海内外的游客。



中央大街的建设始于1898年，起初叫中国街，20世纪20年代后期更名为现在的名字。起初，大街是用于两轮货车运送铁路物资的。1924年3月，中央大街按照俄罗斯工程师的设计铺上了花岗岩地砖。从那以后，它就变成了许多外国商店、旅馆和酒吧的集结地。俄罗斯的皮革、英国的羊毛布料、法国香水、德国医药等都可以在这条时尚的大街上找到。1997年，哈尔滨市政府命名这条街为步行街，又给这个迷人的地方增添了极大的魅力。

中央大街全长1 450米(1 586码)。现如今的中央大街反映了欧式风格建筑的多样化。全大街建有欧式及仿欧式建筑71栋，并汇集了文艺复兴、巴洛克、拆衷主义及现代多种风格市级保护建筑13栋。

现在，大街上的教育书店是哈尔滨现存最大的巴洛克风格建筑，也是中央大街

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

的标志性建筑。妇女儿童用品商店在1917年时曾为协和银行，是古典的文艺复兴时期建筑。此外，还有许多具有异国风情的迷人建筑。所有的建筑都保存完好，在居民的日常生活中也起到了重要的作用。

中央大街是哈尔滨现代文明和历史文明的连接点。它完美地诠释了这个城市并且亲眼目睹了300多年欧洲文化的繁荣发展。

中央大街作为亚洲最长的步行街之一，每当游客到来时，它都会迷人地展示它那深远的文化。它是一个集旅游和购物于一体的综合性娱乐场所，年年都吸引着数以万计的游客。

3. 东北虎林园

由于自然环境变得越来越糟，许多动物都濒临灭绝。东北虎的境况也同样如此。东北虎乃是世界最大的猫科动物，被誉为森林之王。1980年被列为国家一级保护动物。为了保护此类稀有动物，1996年建造了东北虎林园。

该园位于哈尔滨西北松花江北岸，占地1 440 000平方米(355.8英亩)，是目前世界上最大的保护野生东北虎的天然公园。该园具备生态旅游的基础，风景优美，是休闲娱乐的理想去处。这儿有500只纯种东北虎，其中100只可供游人观看。此外，游客还能看到白虎、狮子、猞猁、美洲豹、黑色美洲狮和孟加拉虎。

这个大公园被划分为十个区域，包括幼虎园、育成虎园、成虎区、虎王园、步行区和观虎台。和普通的动物园不同，在东北虎园里，游客和动物的角色交换了。除了在步行区和观虎台外，游客都必须乘坐用铁丝网包围的巴士，而老虎则在公园里自由自在地行走。

成虎区占地360 000平方米(89英亩)，生活着30只野生东北虎。这些老虎大约7、8岁。在幼虎区，有大约40只活泼可爱的幼虎，大约两岁左右。游客可以在附近的水池边观看它们游玩嬉戏。有些幼虎甚至在步行区喂养。公园里还饲养了一些狮子，这些狮子可以和老虎和平相处。

对于喜欢看刺激表演的游客来说，东北虎林园是一个理想的去处。除了观看老虎在户外悠闲地散步外，游客还可以买一些家禽或动物如鸭子、鸡等甚至是奶牛去喂它们。公园的工作人员会给老虎放活食，游客就可以观看老虎捕捉活食的实况。

此外，东北虎林园还有免费的大众科学展览厅，在展厅内，人们可以在图片、标本和文字中了解老虎的相关信息。

4. 圣索非亚大教堂

哈尔滨的圣索非亚大教堂是远东地区最大的东正教堂。整座建筑高53.3米(175英尺)，占地721平方米(0.18英亩)。1996年11月，它被列为国家重点文物保护单位。半年后，哈尔滨市政府对它进行了修复并将其更名为哈尔滨艺术馆。它是哈尔滨旅游业的一个标志性建筑。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

圣索非亚大教堂历史较为复杂。义和团运动(1899～1901)后不久,俄国人于1907年3月建造了这座木质教堂。四年之后,俄国人又用砖石和木材重新建造了这座教堂。第二次动工建造的日期为1923年9月23日,并举行了奠基仪式。整个建筑于1932年11月25日竣工,历时长达9年。这座建筑被誉为具有纪念意义的艺术成果。

这座拜占庭式的教堂看上去非常美丽,据说就像出自上帝之手。事实上,圣索非亚正是意味着"上帝的智慧"。在重建期间,教堂的原始形状被保存了下来。教堂有四层,每一面都有一个门可以进入。到了60年代,入口处的钟楼上安置了7个不同大小和不同音调的钟。



在过去,每当有宗教节日的时候,一个训练有素的鸣钟人用拴在手脚上的绳子鸣钟来演奏音乐节目,钟声响彻天空。

到了90年代,圣索非亚急剧衰退。教堂荒废了,周围建起了大片的公寓和办公楼。宏伟的俄国壁画由于在修饰教堂拱形墙壁时没有被识别出来而被毁于一旦。

然而在1997年,哈尔滨市政府对其进行了修复。但由于原来的俄国壁画已经完全丢失,因此用了描绘哈尔滨社区建筑发展史的新壁画来代替。并且,六个被拿掉的十字架也被放回原版。现在,壁画、吊灯、圆顶和钟楼已被修复,已经恢复了它们昔日的光彩。

周边名胜

亚布力国际滑雪旅游度假区

亚布力国际滑雪旅游度假区是中国最大、条件最好的滑雪胜地。该度假区位于哈尔滨以东200公里(124英里),在黑龙江省尚志市牡丹江西120公里(75英里)处。清朝期间曾经是满清贵族的狩猎场所。

亚布力雪山山高林密,雪质优良,硬度适中。最低温度为-47.2℉。由于海拔高,每年下雪的日子长达170天。十一月到三月底是滑雪的最好时期。

滑雪胜地分为两个区:比赛区和休闲区。高山雪道海拔1 374米(大约4 508英尺),按照国际标准建立,该区为专业滑雪者提供了优良的环境。在休闲区,最高海拔大约只有1 000米(大约3,281英尺),为休闲人士提供了一个相对安全的环境。这里还有一个德国滑道,游客可以从雪山顶上滑下。在滑道上滑雪相对容易,安全性高一些,可以让游客有一个感到很刺激的体验。

亚布力滑雪胜地是最大的高山滑雪训练基地,也是许多专业滑雪比赛的举办

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

地。第三届冬季亚运会在这里举行，随后还有多次全国冬季运动会，全国和全省的其他比赛也在此举行。

除了滑雪，游客还可以享用滑雪场里其他的娱乐设施，如迷你高尔夫球场、网球场、赛马场、热气球、巴拉滑翔机等。这里各种精彩的活动、美丽的森林和舒适的设施可以让游客度过一个轻松有趣的假期。在冬季，滑雪度假区是滑雪者的一个首选地；在夏季，游客可以来此避暑，并享受有趣的户外活动。滑雪场地一年四季如春。

呼和浩特五塔寺和其他塔寺
Five-Pagoda Temple and Other Temples in Hohhot

Natural Features

Five-Pagoda Temple

Five-Pagoda Temple (Wuta Si), which is also called Jingangzuo Sheli Baota, is located in Hohhot City. As there are five small dagobas on the pedestal of the pagoda, it is named Wuta Si. Wuta was originally a building of the temple constructed during 1727 ~ 1732. Now the temple has disappeared, but the pagoda has remained.

The construction of the temple began in the 5th year of the reign of the Emperor Yongzheng of the Qing Dynasty. The Pagoda is 16.5 meters high and looks like a Buddha's Warrior Attendant's seat, with a base under it and five exquisite pagodas on the base. As more than 1 560 relief sculptures of Buddha are engraved on the five pagodas, the temple enjoys the reputation of being "a 10 000 – Buddha Tower". In addition, there are images of Bodhisattva, the four Devarajas, Buddhist Saint, Heavenly Ladies, holy birds and animal, bodhi trees and the engraved scriptures in Mongolian, Tibetan and Sanskrit on the wall of the pagodas. On the wall facing the temple there are 3 marble relief sculptures, including a planisphere marked with Mongolian inscriptions. The pagodas are not only peculiar buildings, but also a huge exquisite carving.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The pagoda is composed of three parts: the base, the seat and the top (five dagobas). The lower part of the seat is inlaid with inscriptions of Diamond Sutra written in Mongolian, Tibetan and Sanskrit. The upper part is niches holding gold-plated statues of Buddha. The body of the pagoda is glazed in greens and yellows.

On the northern wall of the pagoda, three sculptures are inlaid. The Mongolian Astronomical Map is the only one labeled in Mongolian so far in the world and it is of great importance to scientific research.

Compared with other pagodas, Five-Pagoda Temple is unique in at least two aspects: its special structure, pagodas over pagoda, and the green and yellow colored glazes on the short eaves and tops of pagodas. Those make Five-Pagoda Temple quite special, a treasure of Hohhot City.

Special Mention

Zhaojun Tomb



Zhaojun Tomb, which is called "Green Grave" of "Tmur Urhu: in Mongolian, is situated in the southern suburb of Hohhot, 9 kilometers away from the urban area. It is said that it is the tomb of Wang Zhaojun—a maid in the imperial palace of the Emperor Yuan Di of the Han Dynasty—volunteered to marry the chief Huhanye of Xiongnu Horde as a peace envoy. The tomb is an artificial earthen mound with a height of 33 meters. According to the legend, the green grass on the huge mound never turned yellow even when late autumn came.

Zhaojun Tomb is listed among the eight most popular scenic spots in Hohhot.

In front of the tomb, bronze statues of Wang Zhaojun and her husband (Khan), depict a vivid picture of them riding horses and talking to each other intimately. The statues are the symbol of the friendly relations between the Han nationality and the Hui nationality, which was greatly promoted by Wang Zhaojun.

Behind the statues, there are several steles displaying the praises bestowed upon Wang Zhaojun. Among them, the stele marked with the poems of Dong Biwu (a modern revolutionary and a politician) is the most notable one.

Behind the steles, stone stairs and a stone platform are connected with the Zhaojun Tomb. Upon the stone platform you can find a pavilion. The pavilion offers

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tourists a good position from which to overlook the scenery surrounding the tomb and the far away Mt. Yinshan.

Recently, the tomb area has been developed to include cultural facilities such as a Reception Room, Exhibition Room and Painting and Calligraphy Room. The tomb has now become one of the key cultural relics under the jurisdiction of Hohhot.

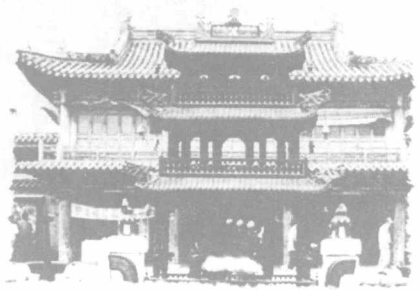
The tomb is famous for its spectacular scenery. The summer months are mild, and the wild flowers and grasses grow in abundance, creating a beautiful natural picture together with the towering green trees. When autumn comes in September, unlike grasses which shriveled and yellow at this time of the year, the grass growing on the tomb is still green and vigorous.

Major Scenic Sites

1. Dazhao Temple

Dazhao Temple is in the old city of Hohhot. This is the earliest temple in Hohhot with a history of over 400 years. The temple is entirely patterned after Chinese temples except for the main hall, which is patterned after a Tibetan Lama temple. In the middle of the Buddha hall sits a silver Buddha statute, which provides Dazhao Temple with its alternative name of Silver Buddha Temple.

Dazhao Temple, 'Wuliang Si (Infinite Temple)' in Chinese, is the oldest building and the largest temple in Hohhot, Inner Mongolia. Locally, people usually refer to it as the Silver Buddha Temple (Yinfo Si) for it is here that there is a rare silver statue of Sakyamuni that measures 2.5-meter-high (8.2-foot-high).



The construction of the temple was completed in 1580 during the Ming Dynasty (1368 ~ 1644) and it is therefore the oldest Lamaist Buddhist temple in Inner Mongolia. There was a major reconstruction in 1640 although much of the original architectural style was retained.

Dazhao Temple owns its fame to a visit by the third Tibetan Dalai Lama in 1586, when he came to dedicate the Silver Buddha statue. As a consequence Hohhot became a religious center for people from all over Mongolia who came to worship at the temple. Another notable event in the temple's long history was a visit by Emperor Kangxi during the early part of the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911).

The temple is now a well-known tourist attraction because of the impressive

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

buildings, splendid statues, delicate frescos, musical instruments and fine collection of Buddhist scriptures. Of its abundant religious relics perhaps the most notable are the 'Three Marvelous Treasures', a title given to the Silver Buddha, the carved dragons on the huge golden pillars on either side of the statue and the murals commemorating the Emperor's visit.

Except for the main hall, the existing buildings within the temple complex are nearly all in the Han style. The main hall is a lamasery combining both Tibetan and Han styles of architecture. It has three parts. The front part is a two-story hall with an empty pavilion in the first floor; Jing Tang (the hall for chanting) and Fo Tang (the hall for worshiping Buddha) are central and rear sections. The perfectly preserved Silver Buddha lies in Fo Tang as it has for some four hundred years. In the splendid and solemn front of the hall, there is a pair of iron lions with their heads held high.

2. Xilituzhao Palace



Xilituzhao Palace is a key cultural protection unit of Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region. It is located in the north of Stone Lane, Yuquan District, Hohhot. It is about 100 meters (328 feet) away from the famous Dazhao Temple. The palace is the largest Lama temple in Hohhot.

Xilitu, means 'Holy Seat' in Mongolian. It was built in the reign of Emperor Wan Li of Ming Dynasty (1368 ~ 1644) for Dalai Lama III and Dalai Lama IV to commemorate the Lamas. Xilituzhao Palace was originally quite small, but later on, in the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911), it was renovated and expanded to its present scale.

The temple was quite grand and unique in architectural style. It remains intact

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

despite being weathered by wind and rain for 400 years. The layout of the whole architectural complex is the typical traditional Han style. The buildings cover an area of 5 000 sq meters (5 979 sq yards). The whole architectural complex stands in a symmetrical order. With a mountain gate and a main hall standing in an axis, side halls, storehouses and pavilions, bell and drum towers symmetrically stand in the wings. The main hall consisting of a sutra hall and a Buddha worshiping hall is the main structure of the palace. It is a Tibetan style wooden structure, with walls decorated with colored glazed brick. The roof is covered with green glazed tiles. The Buddha worshiping hall was damaged in a fire though the sutra hall preserves its original condition.

To the east of the main hall stands a stone pagoda made of white marble, which is the best preserved Lama pagoda of bowl-earthen style in Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region. The pagoda with an average height of 15 meters (49 feet) is magnificent. Originally, to the northeast of the pagoda, there was a larger temple named Naichun Temple, but unfortunately, it was burnt down in 1887. In front of Xilituzhao is a superb paifang, an archway. The archway across the street stands facing the mountain gate. It is a wooden structure decorated with exquisite colored paintings.

Xilituzhao Palace is the most exquisite preserved temple in Hohhot. The magnificent architecture and splendid colored paintings make the palace a tourist resort. Additionally, many religious activities and Buddhist conference are held here every year.

3. Wanbu Huayanjing Pagoda (White Pagoda)

Built in the Liao Dynasty (916 ~ 1125), the Wanbu Huayanjing (Ten Thousand Huayan Buddhist Scriptures) Pagoda is located in the east suburbs about 17 kilometers (11miles) from Hohhot City. Legend says that about ten thousand volumes of the Huayan Buddhist Scripture once were kept in the pagoda, hence its name. Due to its white surface, the pagoda is also called the White Pagoda. In 1982, the Wanbu Huayanjing Pagoda became a national key cultural relic site.

With a height of 55 meters (180 feet), the Wanbu Huayanjing Pagoda is a seven-tier octagonal brick and wood structure. In order to survive earthquakes, many wooden stakes were wedged in the walls to reinforce the structure. Each story of the pagoda consists of the exterior wall, the interior wall and the cloister between them. A spiral staircase connects the stories together and leads to the top of the pagoda. Bronze mirrors are embedded under the eaves of each side of the pa-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

goda. Wind bells hang on the ceiling of the corner of each story and on the rafter of the seventh tier. Approaching the pagoda, tourists can see the bronze mirrors gleaming under the sun and hear the euphonious sound of the wind bells.

On the pedestal are carved beautiful lotus petals. The sculptures of Bodhisattvas, Heavenly Kings and other Buddhist figures are embedded on the surface of the walls of the first and the second tiers. These sculptures are considered to be the finest expressions of the sculpturing art in the Liao Dynasty.

Each story of the pagoda has two gates. On the door head of the south gate of the first story is embedded a plaque with the inscription, 'Wanbu Huayanjing Pagoda'. Originally, nine Jin Dynasty (1115 ~ 1234) steles were preserved on the first floor. Only six remain extant today. Inside the pagoda are also preserved some inscriptions of the Jin, Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties which are written in Chinese or languages of other ethnic minorities.

Other Attractions Around the Place

1. Gegentala Grassland

Gegentala Grassland is to the north of Hohhot, within the Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region. It is the largest and a unique Mongolian scenic spot bearing the Mongolian ethical features of China. In Mongolian 'Gegentala' means a summer resort or the place of grazing in summer. On the grassland, the weather is cool and the natural scenery is fascinating. With thriving grass and abundant water, the green of the grassland reach out as far as your eyes can see.



Colorful wild flowers and flocks of sheep that look like masses of cloud make the scene absolutely beautiful.

Besides the scenery of Gegentala Grassland, visitors can also taste traditional Mongolian food and take part in local activities. While listening to the melodious toasting songs and appreciating traditional Mongolian dances, visitors have the opportunity to taste kumiss, roasted whole sheep and shouba rou (boiled mutton eaten with hands). In traditional Mongolian clothes, visitors can take part in horse race, wrestling and archery which have been popular in Inner Mongolia for thousands of years. At night, people sit around bonfires singing and dancing to their hearts' content. After one day's travel, the Mongol ger, which means home in Mongolian, provides accommodation for the tourist. All these ex-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

periences give visitors the true feeling of what life is like on the vast grassland.

To enrich the tourist experience, modern facilities, such as night clubs and luxurious Mongol gers, have been established. Every July or August when flowers are in full bloom and sheep and horses are in their best condition, a tourism festival called Nadam Fair is held (Nadam Fair means entertainment and amusement in Mongolian. It is a traditional grand meeting and also an annual gala event for the Mongolian). This period is also a favorable season for travel.

2. Xilamuren Grassland

Xilamuren Grassland is a typical altiplano prairie, with exuberant grass and vigorous wildflowers in summer and autumn. Situated 100 kilometers (62miles) from Hohhot, the grassland is also known as Zhaohe because of its Lama Temple-Puhui Temple. Behind Puhui Temple flows Xilamuren River, yellow river in Mongolian. Tourists can go across the bridge to Abinlebao Hill to admire the boundless prairie. Aobao, a stone pile, was originally a land mark in the boundless grassland. As the grassland was far away from mountains, people gradually began to regard aobao as a mountain where they could worship gods. Such worship ceremonies can last several days and are also used as an opportunity for young people to date. The famous folk song Date at aobao may be a product of this custom. It is also said that if you pick up a stone and walk around aobao three times in a clockwise direction, make a wish, and then put the stone back at aobao, your wish will be fulfilled.

Xilamuren Grassland is the first grassland tourist attraction opened in Hohhot. Xilamuren, which means 'yellow water' in Mongolian, is also known as Taihe after Puhui Temple, a Lama temple built in 1769 in the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911).

The best time to visit the grassland is in summer and autumn. At this time of year, the pleasant climate, the blue sky and white clouds, the rolling grass, the wandering flocks and herds, the passionate herdsmen and their Mongolian food will undoubtedly leave you with a deep impression. During the Nadam Festival held every summer, tourists can enjoy a series of different activities, including camel riding, horse racing, wrestling, archery, a camp fire party and singing and dancing. You can even take part in some of the competitions that you are interested in.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙



呼和浩特五塔寺和其他塔寺

Five-Pagoda Temple and Other Temples in Hohhot

自然概况

五塔寺

五塔寺又称金刚座舍宝，位于呼和浩特市内。因为在一个金刚座上建有5个玲珑舍利小塔，所以人们通称为五塔寺。五塔寺始建于公元1727～1732年之间。现在寺庙已经不存在，但五塔却保持至今。

五塔的建设始于清雍正五年，塔高16.5米，像一个佛教武士的座椅。底座上有五个精致的宝塔。五塔上刻有1 560件浮雕作品，因此得名万佛塔。此外，菩萨、四大天神、佛教圣徒、仙女、神鸟，还有蒙古、西藏的雕刻也被刻在了五塔的墙上。正对寺庙的墙壁上有三个大理石浮雕，包括用蒙古文记载的天文图。五塔不仅是一座建筑物，而且是一件巨大的艺术品。

五塔由三个部分组成：底座、座位和塔顶。座位的底部有用蒙古语、藏语和梵文编写的金刚经，上面是一些放有渡金佛像的壁龛。塔身是绿黄相间的建筑。

在塔的北面墙上，镶嵌着三个雕塑。蒙古天文图是目前仅存的一个用蒙古语记载的天文图，具有极高的学术价值。

与其他塔寺相比，五塔寺在两方面有其独到之处：一是结构特别，宝塔摞宝塔，二是塔檐与塔顶颜色绿黄相间。五塔寺由于这些原因而略显特别，是呼市的一个珍宝。

特别提醒

昭君墓

昭君墓，又称“青冢”，蒙古语称特木尔乌尔琥，意为“铁垒”，位于内蒙古呼利浩特市南呼清公路9公里处的大黑河畔，是史籍记载和民间传说中汉朝名妃王昭君的墓地。昭君自愿作为和平特使远嫁匈奴。昭君墓是人工积土，高达33米。据历史记载，即使秋天到来，昭君墓周围也是绿树环绕。

昭君慕被列为呼和浩特八景之一。

墓前矗立着王昭君和丈夫可汗的铜像，栩栩如生的雕刻，描绘了他们骑在马上亲密交谈的画面。这也是汉回友好关系的标志，是昭君的贡献。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

雕像后放着赞颂王昭君的石碑，其中最有名的当属现代革命家、政治家董必武的诗作。

石碑后面，石台阶和石平台与昭君墓相连。平台上有一个亭子，可供游客俯瞰昭君墓周边的景色，还可以眺望遥远的银山。

最近昭君墓又被添置了许多文化设施，如接待室、展览室和书法绘画室。昭君墓现为内蒙古自治区的重点文物保护单位。



昭君墓因其引人入胜的景观而出名。这里夏季气候温和，野花和野草映衬着参天大树，形成了一幅美好的自然画卷。当九月秋季到来时，不同于其他地方枯黄叶落的景象，这儿的草木依然苍劲翠绿。

主要景点

1. 大召寺

大召寺位于呼和浩特旧城南部，是呼和浩特市建立最早的寺庙，距今已有400年的历史。大召寺院建筑考究，大殿是常见的藏汉式喇嘛庙风格，其余部分则是依照传统中式庙宇的式样而建。佛堂中间立着一座银色佛像。由于寺中供奉银制释迦牟尼像，所以当时也称银佛寺。

大召寺，又称无量寺，是内蒙古呼和浩特市最古老最宏大的寺庙建筑。当地人通常都称它为银佛寺是因为寺中供奉着高2.5米的释迦牟尼像。

寺庙的建设于清朝1580年完工，因此也是内蒙古最古老的喇嘛教徒佛教寺庙。在保留原有建筑风格的基础上，该寺在1640年又进行了重建。

大召寺因1568年第三代达赖喇嘛到此捐赠银佛像而出名，结果，呼和浩特就变成了蒙古的宗教中心，人们都前来祭拜。在寺庙悠久的历史上，还有另一个有名的事件，就是清朝皇帝康熙的到访。

寺庙现在成为著名的旅游胜地还因为这儿有令人难忘的建筑、精彩雕像、精美壁画、乐器和收藏完好的佛经。在它许多的宗教遗物中，最著名的或许是“三件珍宝”：银佛像、佛像两旁金色柱子上雕刻的龙和皇帝到访时的题词留念。

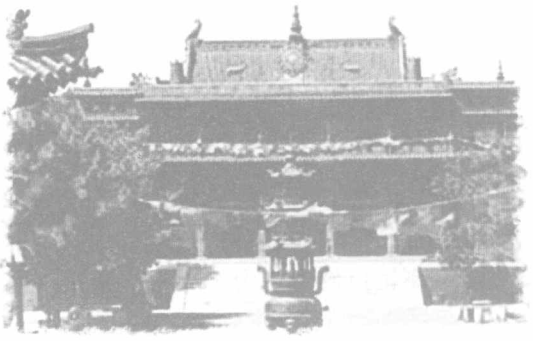
除了主厅，寺庙内现存的建筑都是汉朝建筑风格。主厅是融合了西藏和汉代建筑风格的喇嘛寺院。它分为三部分，前面的部分是一个两层大厅，在一楼有一个空亭子；经堂和佛堂在中间偏后的位置。银佛像保存完好，被安放在佛堂，已有四百年历史了。大厅的前面辉煌而庄严，立着两个昂首挺胸的石狮子。

2. 席力图召（小召）

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

席力图召是内蒙古自治区重要的文化保护单位。该召座落在呼和浩特旧城玉泉区石头巷北端，座北向南。距离大召寺约 100 米，它是呼和浩特市内最大的一个喇嘛寺。席力图是蒙古语，意为“首席”或“法座”。

据史料记载，明万历九年（公元 1582 年），土默特蒙古部阿勒坦汗死后，其子僧格都楞继承了汗位。他执政后，效仿他父亲的作法，决定邀请三世达赖索南坚措到内蒙古右翼各部传播宗教。三世达赖接受了他的邀请。为了迎接索南坚措三世达赖的到来，僧格都楞于万历十二年（公元 1585 年）为他建造了这座小喇嘛庙——席力图召。后来，在康熙、雍正、咸丰和光绪年间，经不断扩建和修缮，席力图召成为呼和浩特地区规模最大的喇嘛教寺院，并掌握着这个地区的黄教大权。召庙建筑宏敞，风格独具，虽经历了四百年风雨和动乱，仍保留较完整。



寺庙的建筑风格盛大而独树一帜。尽管被风化了四百年，依然保持原状。整个建筑的整体布局是典型的传统汉式风格。这些建筑占地 5 000 平方米，对称排列，即从山门到大殿形成一条中轴线。两侧对称布置有侧殿、仓房、碑亭和钟鼓楼。带有藏经堂和拜佛堂的大殿为寺庙的主建筑。这是一个藏式木结构建筑，墙壁用彩色琉璃砖镶嵌，屋顶铺设着绿色琉璃瓦。然而，拜佛堂后来被一把火烧毁，藏经堂却仍保持着原有的风貌。

院内东侧傲然屹立着一座汉白玉砌成的覆钵式喇嘛塔，塔的平均高度为 15 米，很壮观。最初，在塔的东北部，有座更大的寺庙叫乃春庙，但不幸的是，1887 年这座庙被烧毁。在席力图召的前面是一个大牌坊。街道对面有一道拱门面对山门而立，是用精美绘画修饰的木质建筑。

席力图召是呼和浩特保存完好的一个寺庙，壮观的建筑，精彩的绘画使它成为一个旅游胜地。另外，每年许多宗教活动和佛教会议都在此举行。

3. 万部华言经塔（白塔）

修建于辽代（916～1125）的万部华言（一万部华言佛经）经塔位于呼市郊区东部 17 公里处。传说此塔因保存着一万部华言佛经而得名。由于外观为白色，故又称白塔。1982 年，万部华言经塔被列为国家重点文化遗产。

万部华言经塔高 55 米，是七排八角型砖木结构。为了应对地震，许多木铁砧被楔在墙壁内以加固建筑结构。塔的每一面都包括外墙，内墙和两墙之间的回廊。一部螺旋梯把这几面相连，并且通向塔顶。塔各边的房檐下都安装了铜镜，还有风

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

铃挂在每一面角落的天花板和第七排的椽木上。走进塔内，游人就会看到古铜色的镜子在太阳的照射下闪闪发光，听到风铃发出的悦耳的声音。

万部华言经塔基座上雕刻着美丽的莲花花瓣，第一、二层墙壁的表面雕刻着菩萨、玉皇大帝和一些佛教人物。人们认为这些雕塑完美地表达了辽代的雕刻艺术。

塔的每个面都有两扇门。一楼南门的门头上挂着一块匾，上面写着“万部经言塔”。起初，九块金代石碑是在一楼保存着的。而如今却只剩下了六块。塔内还保存着金、元、明、清的一些记载资料，用汉语或其他少数民族语言编写而成。

周边名胜

1. 格根塔拉草原

格根塔拉草原在内蒙古自治区呼和浩特市北部，是具有中国蒙古族特色的最大且独特的蒙古景点。格根塔拉草原的蒙语意思为“避暑胜地”。在草原上，气候凉爽，自然风景引人入胜。草木生长旺盛，水资源丰富，放眼望去，满眼皆绿。

多姿多彩的野花和成群的羊儿使风景变得异常优美。

游客除了欣赏格根塔拉草原的风景，还可以品尝传统的蒙古美食，参加当地的民俗活动；除了可以欣赏旋律优美的敬酒歌，还可以欣赏传统的蒙古舞，品尝马奶酒，烤羊肉和手抓羊肉。

游客还可以穿着传统的蒙古服装参加赛马比赛、搏斗和射箭，这些活动在内蒙古地区已经流行了几千年。晚上，人们围坐在篝火旁唱歌跳舞，非常尽兴。结束了一天的旅行，游客可以在蒙古包休息。蒙古包对蒙古人而言就是家。所有这些都让游客真真切切地感受着大草原。

为了使游客的经历更加丰富，像夜总会、豪华蒙古包之类的现代娱乐设施已经建立起来。每年七、八月份鲜花盛开时节，也是羊儿、马儿最为膘肥体壮之时。这里会举办极具地方特色的旅游节。这个时期是最适宜来此旅行。

2. 希拉穆仁草原

希拉穆仁草原是典型的高原草场。每当夏秋时节，绿草如茵，鲜花遍地，一望无际的景色，使人如痴如醉。希拉穆仁草原俗称“召河”，位于呼和浩特市北100公里处，因在希拉穆仁河边有清代喇嘛庙“普会寺”而得名。跨过河上大桥可达阿勒宾敖包山上观赏美丽的草原风光。敖包，是一个石堆，最初是一望无际大草原的一个地标。因为草原离山很远，渐渐地，人们就把敖包当成祭拜天神的山。这种祭拜仪式持续好几天，因此也为年轻人的约会提供了便利。著名歌曲《敖包相会》就是这个习俗的产物。据说，如果你捡起一块石头按顺时针方向沿着敖包走三圈，许个愿望，然后把这块石头放回敖包，愿望就会实现。

希拉穆仁草原是呼和浩特第一个向游人开放的草原旅游胜地。希拉穆仁的蒙语意思为“黄色的水”。“普会寺”原为呼和浩特席力图召六世活佛的避暑行宫，建于乾隆34年(公元1769年)。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

去希拉穆仁草原旅游的最佳时节为夏季和秋季。在这段时间里，气候宜人，蓝天，白云，起伏的青草，漫步的牛羊，热情的牧人和蒙古美食，毫无疑问会给游客留下很深的印象。在一年一度的旅游节上，游客可以体验不同的活动，有骑骆驼、赛马、摔跤、射击、篝火晚会。游客甚至可以参加一些自己感兴趣的比赛。



教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chapter 2 华东地区 East China

黄山 Mt. Huangshan

Natural Features



Located in southern Anhui Province, Mount Huangshan, or Yellow Mountain covers an area of 250 square kilometers, of which 154 square kilometers are key scenic attractions. The mountain has 72 strangely shaped peaks, of which Celestial Capital Peak, Lotus Peak, and Brightness Apex are all over 1 800m above sea level with the impact of abrupt shooting majesty, grandeur, and delicate grace.

The pines on the mountain are tall and have fascinating shapes. The famous Welcoming Guests (Yingke) Pine (1 500 years old) and See-Guest-Off Pine have become a symbol of being faithful, unyielding and hospitable. More than 200 days each year on Mt Huangshan are misty and cloudy. The vapors coagulate to form a sea of clouds. As the clouds cloak the mountain, they give a feeling of being in fairyland.

Mt Huangshan holds the charms of all other famous mountains in China, and

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

claims to be "the most spectacular mountain in the world". It is as magnificent as Mt Taishan, precipitous as Mt Huashan, graceful as Mt Emei, and has the misty cloud of Mt Hengshan, the delicate rocks of Mt Yandang, and the pouring waterfalls of Mt Lushan. Xu Xia-ke, traveler and geologist of Ming Dynasty, visited Mt Huangshan twice and praised that "Once on top, one finds no other match. This is the acme!" and soon after, there is the saying "No mountain is worth seeing after a trip to the Five Sacred Mountains, but none of the Five is worth seeing after a trip to Huangshan".



Mt Huangshan has more than 400 famous scenic attractions, of which 140 have been developed and opened to tourists. Mt Huangshan is an integrated scenic zone with all the rare beauties of peaks, rocks, pines, clouds, and springs, particularly reputed for its four wonders of strange pines, grotesque rocks, cloud seas, and hot springs. There are not only 2 lakes, 3 waterfalls, 16 springs, and 24 streams that add a charm to each other, but also the ancient traces of Quaternary glaciers found by China's distinguished geologist Li Si-guang. The mountain is abundant with native plants and animal resources, and the wealth of water potentials provide the mountain with an additional amazing beauty.

Apart from the miraculous views of the natural landscape, the sites of human

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

culture in Mt Huangshan are even more quantitative and brilliant. The broad-minded mountain has accepted and melted together in itself the cultural ideologies and events of all times and classes, and formed the distinctive culture of its own. It is the cradle of the influential school of landscape painting, and it preserves over 200 sites of delicate cliff inscriptions of the past times.

In December of 1990, UNESCO included Mt Huangshan on their World Heritage List as a property of the world, for both its natural and cultural values. In February 2004, Mt Huangshan National Geopark was approved by UNESCO as a site of the World Geological Parks on its list of World Network of Geoparks.

Special Mention

Mt. Huangshan is geologically that of fully developed granite, with faults and cracks interlacing each other to form various amazing caves and crevices. Located in the zone of subtropical monsoon, the temperature drop as the altitude increases. Meanwhile, there is a sharp difference between the amount of sunshine, and the local terrain is the dominating factor of the local weather, namely the distinctive mountain monsoon climate: foggy, humid, and rainy. The vertical zonality of the soils is obvious: yellow mountain soil below 900m above sea level, yellow brown soil at the altitude from 900m ~ 1 600m, and alpine meadow soil at the flat tops 1 600m ~ 1 840m above sea level.

Major Scenic Sites

Cloud Valley area: Cloud Valley Temple
Arhats Peak
Clear Pond Peak
Eyebrow Peak
Incense Burner Peak
Thousand Feet Waterfall
Jadeite Valley
Nine Dragon Waterfall

Hot Spring area: Mercy Light Temple
Inverted "V" Waterfall
Drunken Rock
Mountain Waist Temple

Pine Valley area: Jadeite Pond
Hibiscus Valley
Pine Valley Nunnery

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Five Dragons Pond

North Sea area: White Goose Hill
White Cloud Stream
Stone From Heaven
Scholar Peak
Brightness Apex
Alchemy Peak
Dreamy Flowery Writing Brush
Cloud Dispelling Pavilion
Lion Peak
Convincing Peak
Flower Scattering Basin

Jade Screen area: Dragon Fish Peak
Lotus Peak
Squirrel Skipping to Celestial Capital
Celestial Capital Peak
Traces of Quaternary Glacier in Mt Huangshan
Heaven sea
Greeting Pine
Jade Screen Peak

Other Attractions Around the Place

Huashan Mysterious Grottoes　　Xidi and Hongcun ancient villages
Mt. Qiyun Scenic Area　　Mt. Jiuhua



黄山
Mt. Huangshan

自然概况

位于安徽省南部的黄山，占地面积约250平方公里，其中精华风景区域约154平方公里。这里有奇峰72座，其中天都峰、莲花峰和光明顶都在海拔1 800米以上，拔地极天，气势磅礴，雄姿灵秀。

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

黄山上的松树高耸挺拔，形状特异。人所周知的迎客松（1 500 年）和送客松已经成为守信、坚强和热情的象征。山上每年有 200 天都是笼罩在密云浓雾下，烟雾水气的凝结形成了茫茫雾海。由于整座山峰都笼罩在云海之中，使到此游玩的人们感觉像进入人间仙境一样。

黄山博采中国名山之长，号称“天下第一奇山”。泰山之雄伟，华山之险峻，衡山之烟云，庐山之飞瀑，雁荡之巧石，峨嵋之秀丽，黄山无不兼而有之。明代旅行家、地理学家徐霞客两游黄山，赞叹说：“登黄山天下无山，观止矣！”从此，黄山又有了“五岳归来不看山，黄山归来不看岳”的美誉。



黄山有 400 多处名胜景点，其中 140 余处已经开发并向游人开放。黄山是一座综合峰、石、松、云、泉等各种罕见景观的风景区，并以奇松、怪石、云海、温泉四绝著称于世。其二湖、三瀑、十六泉、二十四溪相映成趣。山上还有著名的地质学家李四光发现的第四纪冰川遗址。黄山的原生植物种质资源和野生动物资源丰富。其丰富的水资源更增添了黄山的神奇魅力。

除了以奇绝的自然山水大观著称于世之外，黄山的人文景观更是灿若星河。黄山以博大的情怀，将各历史时期、各社会阶层的各种文化意识和行为融为一体，在其自然景物与环境之间，形成了特定的黄山文化。黄山是中国著名山水画派的发祥地，还有精美的历代摩崖石刻 200 余处。

1990 年 12 月，黄山被联合国教科文组织作为文化和自然遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。2004 年 2 月，安徽黄山地质公园被联合国教科文组织世界地质公园专家评审会列入世界地质公园名录。

特别提醒

黄山山体的花岗岩体发育完整，断裂和裂隙纵横交错，形成瑰丽多姿的洞穴、孔道。黄山处于亚热带季风气候区内，山高谷深，气温垂直递减。同时，北坡和南坡受阳光的辐射差大，局部地形对其气候起主导作用，形成了特殊的山区季风小气候——云雾多、湿度大、降水多。黄山土壤的垂直分布地带特性明显，海拔 900 米以下为山地黄壤，900 ~ 1 600 米为山地黄棕壤，1 600 ~ 1 840 米为山

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

顶平台地域的高山草甸土。

主要景点

云谷景区:云谷寺,罗汉峰,清潭峰,眉毛峰,香炉峰,百丈瀑,翡翠谷,九龙瀑

温泉景区:慈光阁,人字瀑,醉石,半山寺

松谷景区:翡翠池,芙蓉谷,松谷庵,五龙潭

北海景区:白鹅岭,白云溪,飞来石,夫子峰,光明顶,炼丹峰,梦笔生花,排云亭,狮子峰,始信峰,散花坞

玉屏景区:鳌鱼峰,莲花峰,松鼠跳天都,天都峰,黄山第四纪冰川遗址,天海,迎客松,玉屏峰

周边名胜

花山谜窟——浙江风景名胜区　西递——宏村
齐云山景区　九华山



武夷山
Mt. Wuyi

Natural Features

Mt. Wuyi is located in Fujian Province at its boundary with Jiangxi Province, running along for about 500km at an average altitude of over 1 000m. The legend says that in the era of Tang Yao, a senior man called Peng Zu took hermitage in the mountain with his sons Wu and Yi, who first developed this area, therefore the mountain was referred to as Mt Wuyi in their honor. Yet other folks say that this was once the settlement of the ancient Minyue people governed by their King Wuyi, hence the mountain's name.

Mt. Wuyi scenic area is in the southern suburb of Wuyishan City, Fujian Province, the southeastern section of northern Mt Wuyi ranges, a strap about 14km long and 5km wide, covering an area of 70km^2 about 350m above sea level in average. Geologically, the mountain is made up of low hills of red sand rocks, namely the Danxia landform. For the crustal movement of hundreds of millions of years, the topography had been changing all the time that finally created the present shooting peaks flanked by clear streams, which brings to the mountain the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

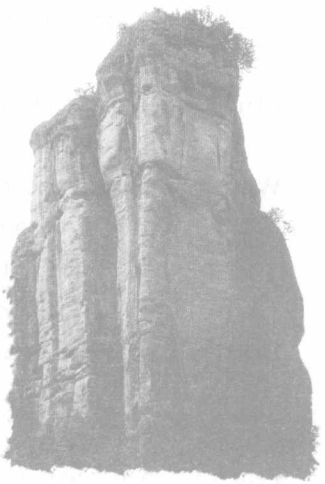
honor of "the most miraculous and graceful in southeastern China".

Mt. Wuyi hosts all the three dominant beliefs in China: Taoism, Buddhism, and Confucianism. Thus it is a reputed cultural mountain with a long history. The total area of this heritage is 999.75km^2, the second vast in China that have been included in World Heritage List. In accordance with the features of the resources, the area is subdivided into four parts: Bio-diversity quarter in the west, Nine bends Ecology quarter in the center, Natural and cultural Scenery quarter in the east, and Chengcun Village of the ancient King Minyue.

In December of 1999, UNESCO inscribed Mt Wuyi on its World Heritage List as a cultural and natural property of the world.

Special Mention

Mt. Wuyi is near Tropic of Cancer, seated in subtropical humid monsoon climatic zone, with an average annual temperature of about 17.9℃. The temperate and moist climate provides favorite conditions for the vegetation of Mt Wuyi, which is therefore particularly teaming and prosperous with all lives all year round. As the seasons shift, the scenes offer varied interest as well. In early spring, the mountain is attractive with lively green dotted with brilliant flowers; in summer, it is the ideal resort from the seasonal heat with its cooling shade of the green trees and the bubbling brooks; in autumn, it is impressive with the azure sky, the flaming red maples, and the expanses of blooming camellia; and in winter, the evergreens brave a chilly white world that creates a special beauty. And for all seasons the sunshine, the rainfall, the mist, and the cloud all brings about unpredictable mirages of the mountain scenes.



Major Scenic Sites

Nine Bends Stream area

Bend Nine: Xingcun Village—the start of Bend Nine
White Cloud Rock
Turtle Rocks

Bend Eight: Upstream Lion Rock
Drum Peak

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Bend Seven: Langgan Rock
High City Rock
Bend Six: Thundering Rock
Cloth Drying Rock
Rejoined Bamboo Shoot
Hidden Screen Peak
Bend Five: Dressing Terrace
Wuyi Elite House
Heaven Pillar Peak
Evening View Peak
Bend Four: Imperial Tea Plantation
Minor Nine Bends
Big Hiding Peak
Bend Three: Immortals School Peak
Small Hiding Peak
Bend Two: Jade Maid Peak
Iron Slab Peak
Bend One: Water Light Rock
Lion Peak
Wuyi Palace area: Exhibition of Historic Relics in Mt Wuyi
Great King Peak
Curtain Pavilion Peak
Changing Bones Rock
Heaven Tour Peak area: Heaven Tour Peak
Tea Cave
Cloud Nest
Peach Garden Cave area: Peach Garden Cave
Three Rises Peak
Three Tiers Peak
Heaven Heart Rock area: Eagle Beak Rock
Floating Fragrance Gully
Heaven Hoist
Big Red Robe: King of All Teas
Eternal Happiness Temple
Water Curtain Cave area: Water Curtain Cave

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Dragon Peak
Green Rock
Buddhist Land Rock
Green Lion Rock

Tiger Roaring Rock area: A Thread of Sky
Tiger Roaring Rock

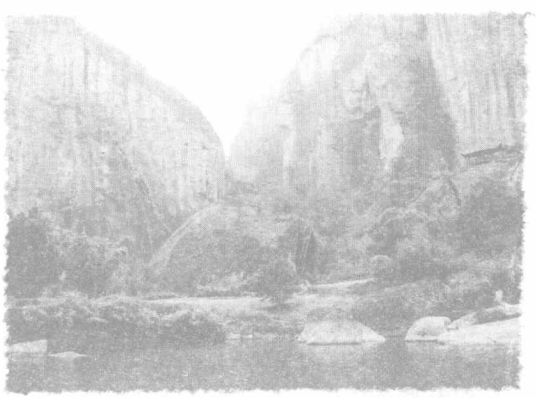
Yulin Pavilion and Lotus Peak area: Yulin Pavilion—site of Song Dynasty pottery kiln
Lotus Peak

Other Attractions Around the Place

Remains of the ancient city of Han Dynasty
Mt. Wuyi Nature Reserve
Former residence of Zhu Xi
Golden Lake
Yuhua Cave Scenic Spot

武夷山
Mt. Wuyi

自然概况

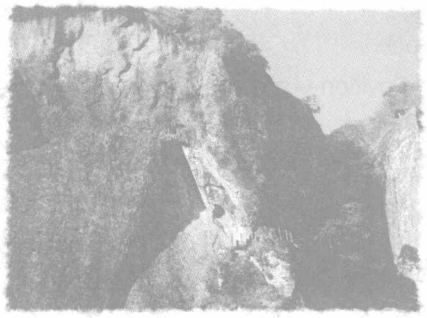


武夷山位于福建省与江西省的交界处，全长500多公里，平均海拔1 000米以上。相传唐尧时代的长寿老翁彭祖携二子茹芝饮瀑，隐于此山。其长子曰“武”，次子曰“夷”，二人开山挖河，后人为纪念他们，就把此山称为“武夷山”。另一种说法是，此地原居住有古代闽越族人，其首领名武夷君，故而得名。

武夷山风景区在福建武夷山市

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

南郊、武夷山脉北段东南麓，全区呈长条形，东西宽约5公里，南北长约14公里，面积70平方公里，平均海拔350米。武夷山是由红色砂砾岩组成的低山丘陵，属丹霞地貌。几亿年以来，因地壳运动，地貌不断发生变化，构成了山峰挺拔、碧水萦回的“碧水丹山”美景，享有“奇秀甲东南”之美称。



武夷山集道、佛、儒教于一身，是一座历史悠久的文化名山。总面积999.75平方公里，是迄今为止我国已申报的世界遗产中面积第二大的。根据区内资源的不同特征，全区划分为西部生物多样性、中部九曲溪生态、东部自然与文化景观以及城村闽越王遗址四个保护区。

1999年12月，联合国教科文组织将武夷山作为文化和自然双重遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

武夷山邻近北回归线，属于亚热带湿润季风气候区，年平均气温为17.9℃。夏无酷暑，冬无严寒。温暖湿润的气候为武夷山植物生长提供了优越的自然条件。因此，武夷山中竹树茂密，花草繁盛，鸟语花香，四季如春。随着时序的流转，山光水色会给人以不同的情趣：早春，山青水绿，野花红艳，明媚动人；入夏，林木交荫，处处流水潺潺，凉风习习，堪称避暑胜地；秋来，天高气爽，满山丹枫如染，茶花盛开，令人心旷神怡；冬至，寒山映日，松翠不凋，又是一种风情。至于阴晴朝暮，风烟雨雪，山川景色更是变幻莫测。

主要景点

九曲溪景区

九曲：九曲始点——星村镇，白云岩，水龟石
八曲：上水狮石，鼓子峰
七曲：琅玕岩，城高岩
六曲：响声岩，晒布岩，接笋峰，隐屏峰
五曲：更衣台，武夷精舍，天柱峰，晚对峰
四曲：御茶园，小九曲，大藏峰
三曲：仙馆岩，小藏峰
二曲：玉女峰，铁板嶂
一曲：水光石，狮子峰

武夷宫景区

武夷山历史文物陈列馆，大王峰，幔亭峰，换骨岩

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

天游峰景区

天游峰，茶洞，云窝

桃源洞景区

桃源洞，三仰峰，三叠峰

天心岩景区

鹰嘴岩，流香涧，天车架，“茶中之王”——大红袍，永乐禅寺，杜辖岩

水帘洞景区

水帘洞，龙峰，碧石岩，佛国岩，青狮岩

虎啸岩景区

一线天，虎啸岩

遇林亭、莲花峰景区

遇林亭——宋代瓷窑遗址，莲花峰

周边名胜

古汉城遗址　　武夷山自然保护区

朱熹故里　　金湖

玉华洞风景区



庐山
Mt. Lushan

Natural Features

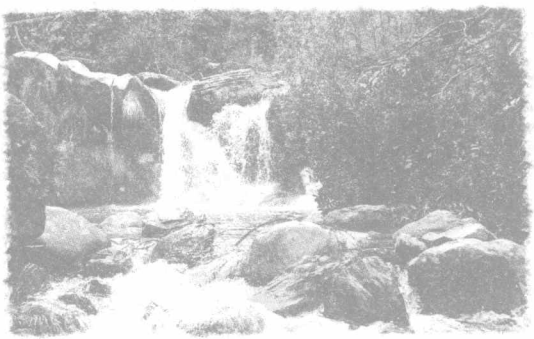
Mount Lushan is 36 kilometers south of Jiujiang City, Jiangxi Province. It lies south of Yangtze River and west of Poyang Lake. The scenic area covers 350 square kilometers with the buffer zone reaching out for 500 square kilometers. Mt Lushan is well known since ancient times for its magnificence, marvel, precipice, and grace.

Mt Lushan has plenty of scenic attractions, including the Wulaofeng (Five Elderly Men Peaks), Xianrendong (Immortal's Cavern) and the White Deer Cave Academy. The White Deer Cave Academy was one of the earliest institutes of higher learning in China. It was first built by Li Bo, an official of Tang Dynasty (618 ~ 907) at the beginning of the seventh century and was extended during the Song

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

Dynasty (960 ~ 1279). It was one of the four largest academies in China, and teachers such as Zhu Xi and Lu Xiangshan, philosophers of the Southern Song Dynasty (1127 ~ 1279), had many students here.

Mt Lushan has also the unusual glacial traces of the Quaternary Period, and a rich collection of landforms such as rivers, lakes, slopes, and peaks, regarded as a garden of geology. It has 171 peaks recognized with a name long ago, of which the summit Dahanyang Peak rises up for 1 474m above sea level. Scattered among the peaks are 26 ridges and hills, 20 ravines and gullies, 16 caves, and 22 groups of grotesque rocks. Waters gush down the mountain and form 22 falls, 18 streams, and 14 ponds or lakes. Its Three-stepped Fall is reputed worldwide and has a height difference as big as 155m.



Mt Lushan has a wealth of biological resources in an integrated ecological system. About 76.6% of the area is covered with forests, providing a paradise for over 3 000 species of plants, 2 000 insects, 171 birds, and 33 animals. At the foot there is also the Poyang Lake Migrant Birds Reserve, protecting the largest community of white crane in the world, and other rare birds such as white-napped crane and white head stork, amounting to over 4 000 individuals.

The climate of Mt Lushan is that of subtropical monsoon, typical of mountainous areas. The temperature drops as the mountain rises higher. In summer it is exceptionally cool, and has long been reputed as a world famous resort from the summer heat.

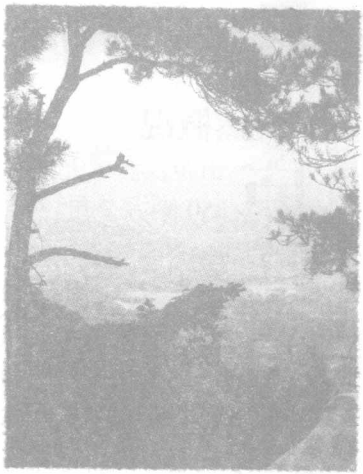
Mt Lushan is a holy site of religions as well, and in one mountain there hosts five major religions of the world. Well preserved in Mt Lushan are over 20 sites of ancient times, as well as 600 or more sites of the mediaeval times. The scenic quarters boast for its 16 natural wonders, 474 sites of interest, 900 cliff inscriptions, 300 stone steles, and 600 villas of modern times in various Chinese or foreign styles.

Mt Lushan is recognized as one of the first group of the key scenic sites in China. In 1991 it was award with the honor of one of the "Top Forty tourism sites of China". In December of 1996, Mt Lushan was inscribed in the World Heritage List

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

as a world natural scenery. And in February, 2004, Mt Lushan National Geopark was approved by UNESCO as a site of the World Geological Parks on its list of World Network of Geoparks.

Special Mention



The natural wonders and human creations blend and combine together in Mt Lushan. They spread out in rings from the central Mt Lushan. In this complete mountainous scenic area, there are 53 interesting sites that consist of 230 scenic views or interesting objects, in forms of waterfalls, springs, peaks, rocks, meteorological phenomena, plants, geological forms, rivers, lakes, human cultures, and villas, which scatter in Kuling area, mountain north, West Wood area, and Xunyang area. Together with Yangtze River and Poyang Lake by them, for them, and of them, they demonstrate a personality and charm of their own.

Major Scenic Sites

Tour Line 1: Kuling

Small Heaven Pond	Flowery Path
Brocade Valley	Immortal's Cave
Big Heaven Pond	Dragon Head Cliff
Rock Gate Gully	Twin Dragon Ponds
Lulin Lake	Lushan Museum
Site of the "Lushan Conference"	Meilu Villa

Tour Line 2: Hanpo Mouth — Lushan Botanical Garden
Five Seniors Peak — Three-stepped Fall
Great Hanyang Peak

Tour Line 3: White Deer Cave Academy — Grace Peak
East Wood (Donglin) Temple

Other Attractions Around the Place

Tengwang Pavilion — Meiling Mountain
Poyang Lake

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

庐山
Mt. Lushan

自然概况

庐山距江西省九江市 36 公里。它北临长江，东濒鄱阳湖，整个景区占地 350 平方公里，外围保护地带面积为 500 平方公里，自古就以“雄奇险秀”闻名于世。

庐山拥有众多名胜景点，其中包括五老峰，仙人洞和白鹿洞书院。白鹿洞书院是我国南宋时期的最高学府，它最早由唐朝(7 世纪初)官员李渤建立，后又扩建于宋朝。它是中国古代最大的四所书院之一。朱熹等历史名人曾在此讲学论道，南宋许多哲人也有众多弟子在此。



庐山还拥有独特的第四纪冰川遗迹，有河流、湖泊、坡地、山峰等多种地貌类型，具有地质公园之称。庐山自古被命名的山峰有 171 座，主峰大汉阳峰的海拔为 1,474 米。群峰间散布着岗岭 26 座、堑谷 20 条、岩洞 16 个、怪石 22 处。水流在起伏的山谷间跌宕，有瀑布 22 处，溪涧 18 条、湖潭 14 处。驰名中外的庐山三叠泉瀑布，落差达 155 米。

庐山生物资源丰富，生态系统完整。森林覆盖率达 76.6%。植物有 3 000 余种，昆虫 2 000 余种，鸟类 171 种，兽类 33 种。山麓还有鄱阳湖候鸟保护区，保护区内发现了世界上最大的白鹤群以及白枕鹤、白头鹤等珍稀鸟类，总数达4000多只。

庐山处于亚热带季风区域，具有山地气候特色，气温随高度而递减。这里夏季特别凉爽，是世界著名的避暑胜地。

庐山还是宗教的荟萃地，一山聚集了五大宗教。

庐山地区，有远古文化遗址 20 余处和中古文化遗址 600 余处。在风景区范围内，有 16 个自然奇观、474 处景点、900 余处摩崖石刻、近 300 余块碑刻，还有 600 余幢风格各异的近代中外别墅。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

庐山是首批国家重点风景名胜区，1991 年荣获“中国旅游胜地 40 佳”称号。1996 年 12 月，庐山作为“世界文化景观”被列入《世界遗产名录》。2004 年 2 月，江西庐山地质公园被联合国教科文组织世界地质公园专家评审会列入世界地质公园名录。

特别提醒

庐山风景名胜区自然景观与人文景观和谐交融。景区以庐山山体为主，呈环状向四周辐射。在这座完整的山岳型风景名胜区内，散布有 53 处景点，包括了 230 个景物景观，它们以瀑泉、山石、气象、植物、地质、江湖、人文、别墅建筑为类型错落在牯岭景区、山南景区、东林景区、浔阳景区等各大景区内，与长江、鄱阳湖相依、相融、相映，形成了鲜明的个性和独特的魅力。

主要景点

庐山一线导游：牯岭，小天池，花径，锦绣谷，仙人洞，大天池，龙首崖，石门涧，双龙潭，芦林湖，博物馆，庐山会议会址，美庐别墅

庐山二线导游：含鄱口，植物园，五老峰，三叠泉，大汉阳峰

庐山三线导游：白鹿洞书院，秀峰，东林寺

周边名胜

腾王阁　　梅岭

鄱阳湖

苏州园林
Suzhou Classical Gardens

Natural Features

Suzhou is located beside Taihu Lake, and it is a fertile and scenic land with a subtropical monsoon climate, moderate with distinctive four seasons. Suzhou is a city of rivers and canals and also a city of gardens. Hence it is called the “Venice of the Orient”. Suzhou was first established in 514 BC and it was once the capital city of Kingdom of Wu. King of Wu became the most powerful of the time because of the support of the mighty economy of the area. In Song, Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties, Suzhou boasted as the most abundant “land of grain and meat” of the nation and thus began from Song Dynasty the famous say-

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

ings that "Suzhou on earth matches paradise in Heaven" and "bumper harvests in Suzhou alone are enough for the whole nation".

Suzhou is the site of the prosperous Wu culture, and it has bred up a great many of scholars and high officials in all dynasties. When these scholars and high officials returned to their birthplace because of either retirement after ambition fulfillment or for hermitage due to disappointment, they would spend a great amount of money on gardens for literary cultivation in their senior years. Besides, the beautiful topography, gentle customs, and peaceful life of Suzhou's also helped to promot the construction and advance of so many landscape gardens in Suzhou.

The Ming and Qing dynasties between the 14th and 20th century were its prime periods of garden building, when at one time there were more than 200 private family gardens. A dozen of them are still in good condition today, including the top four classic gardens—the Fisherman's Net Garden, Lion Grove, Humble Administrator's Garden and Lingering Garden.



The Humble Administrator's Garden, the largest, occupies four hectares. It was built in 1522 during the Ming Dynasty. Water accounts for three-fifths of its total area. All the major buildings face the water. Centering on the pool, bridges and corridors harmoniously link up isles, rockeries, pavilions and towers. The garden shows a natural and flowing artistic style.

The Lingering Garden, on the other hand, demonstrates a compact layout and a delicate decorative art. Built in the Ming Dynasty, it was renovated and expanded in the early 19th century during the Qing Dynasty to cover an area of 3.3 hectares as we see it today. The garden is divided into four sections: artificial hills in the west, pastoral scenery in the north, hall and pavilion structures in the east and hills and waters at the center. A winding corridor of over 1 000 meters links them.

The unique charm of these gardens has led to their entry into the list of world cultural heritage in 1997.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Special Mention

"Suzhou gardens are the best of those in southern China that are the best of the world". Generally little and delicate, they produce a sense of a beautiful painting. The stress is put on meandering through a labyrinth of complexity and continuous surprises of vista at each step forward. The miniature mountains and rocks, the bridges and the waters,—they are small yet grand; the flowers and trees, the towers and pavilions,—they are exquisite with seclusion and serene. Within limits the garden spaces are so ingeniously handled that the effect of infinitude is produced, hence they are reputed as "vast landscape condensed in a little garden".



Major Scenic Sites

Humble Administrator's Garden
Lingering Garden: Zigzag Stream Tower
Master-of-Nets Garden: Three-step Bridge
Mountain Villa with Embracing Beauty: Piled rocks and little bridges
Surging Waves Pavilion
Lion Forest Garden
Garden of Cultivation
Couple Garden Retreat: Book Repository Tower

Other Attractions Around the Place

Tiger Hill (Huqiu)
Panmen Gate
Hanshan Temple (Cold Mountain Temple)
XuanMiao Temple
Mudu Town
Tongli Town
Retreat and Reflection Garden: "A boat playing amongst blossoms"
Zhouzhuang Town

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

苏州园林
Suzhou Classical Gardens

自然概况

苏州位于长江下游的太湖之滨，是个土地肥沃，风光秀丽的地方，属亚热带季风气候，四季分明，气候温和。苏州既是一个河网密布的城市，又是一个优美的园林城市，因此具有“东方威尼斯”之称。苏州建城始于公元前514年，历史上曾是吴国的首都。凭借这一地区强大的经济实力，吴国得以成为当时最强之国。到了宋、元、明、清时期，这里已经成为全国最富裕的“鱼米之乡”。宋代时期就有“天上天堂，地下苏杭”、“苏湖熟，天下足”的说法。



苏州是吴文化的繁荣之地，历代都养育了许多科举及第的文人和达官贵人。他们衣锦还乡或失意归隐回到故里后，纷纷筹集巨资建造园林，借以抒发其晚年的文人情怀。此外，苏州的山灵水秀、温雅的民风和安定的社会也促进了大量园林的建设和发展。

公元14～20世纪明清时期是园林建设的鼎盛时期，这里的私家园林一度有200余处，其中有十几座园林依然保持完好，包括网狮园、狮子林、拙政园、留园等四大名园。

拙政园面积最大，占地4公顷，其中水域占总面积的五分之三，建于明朝时期的1522年。其总体布局以水池为中心，所有主要亭台楼榭皆临水而建，小桥和走廊与小岛、假山、亭塔连接和谐。园林显示出自然流畅的艺术风格。

留园则展现了一种整体布局紧密和巧妙的装饰艺术。留园建于明朝，19世纪早期的清朝间得到修缮和扩建，建成了现在的占地3.3公顷的留园。留园由4个部分组成：西区的假山、北区的田园景色、东区的曲廊亭阁和中区的山水。各区间由长约1 000多米的蜿蜒长廊相连。

这些园林以其别具一格的魅力于1997年被列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

“江南园林甲天下，苏州园林甲江南”。苏州园林大多小巧玲珑，置身其内让人有身在画中的感觉。苏州园林在造园上讲究步移景异、步步为景。园中一山一石、小桥流水，于细微中见宏远，一花一木、亭榭楼台，于精巧中寓幽深；仿佛天地之宽、山川之迥皆融于其中，故被人称为“万里湖山入小园”。

主要景点

拙政园
网师园：三步桥
沧浪亭
艺圃：博雅堂
怡园
留园：曲溪楼
环秀山庄
狮子林
耦园：藏书阁

周边名胜

虎丘山
寒山寺
木渎镇
退思园：石舫“闹红一舸”
盘门
玄妙观
同里
周庄

西湖
West Lake

Natural Features

Located in Hangzhou, provincial seat of Zhejiang Province, the West Lake is one of the most famed tourist attractions in China. For centuries, the West Lake has been well known both for its picturesque landscape and for cultural heritages surviving yet illustrating the past dynasties.

The landscape area of the West Lake includes the surrounding hills and nearby historical sites as well as the lake itself. The lake area covers around 60 square kilometers consisting of 5.68 square kilometers of water area.

The West Lake is the centerpiece of the natural fascination with bluish hills on three sides, serene and charming. Along the Lake, there stand lines of willows with ancient bridges leaping over them. Mist now veils the whole landscape, now

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

just perches lightly on the green and luxuriant hills in the vicinity with tiny streams winding in deep valleys.



More than ninety theme parks and scenic spots are dotted around the lake area such as the Ten Views of West Lake and ten-odd newly named tourist attractions. Rain or shine, the West Lake holds great attraction to tourists in all seasons.

Besides its impressive scenery, the West Lake boasts of abundant cultural heritage and legends passed from generation to generation, co-mingling natural features, past personages, history, and art in the local area.

Thanks to its long history and historic importance, the West Lake is also a cultural resort with 5 major historical monuments and cultural relics under state protection, 35 under provincial protection, 25 under municipal protection as well as 39 theme museums and cultural spots under a protection system.

In the whole landscape area, there are more than one hundred scenic spots open to the tourists at present. Each year there are 0.5 million of foreign guests and 12 million domestic visitors coming to Hangzhou.

In 1999 the West Lake is ranked as the National Model of the Ten Beauty Spots by the Publicity Department CCCPC, Civic Virtues Office CCCPC, and National Tourism Administration.

Special Mention

A number of specific features can be singled out as worthy of particular note. To the south of center of the Outer Lake is a man-made island known as the Island of Little Oceans, that encloses four small lakes. From here one can view the Three Pools Mirroring the Moon when at night candles are lit in stone lanterns jutting out of the water, thus creating the impression of the reflections of three moons. The scene is truly magical on the night of the Autumn Moon Festival.

Solitary Hill Island lies between the Outer Lake and the north Inner Lake and is an ideal spot from which to admire the vista. The nearby Two Peaks Embracing the Sky is another impressive sight, especially when crossing the lake by boat.

Near to the lake can be found the Ling Yin Temple in its woodland setting near

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

to Fei Lai Feng (Peak Flown From Afar). Legend has it that this limestone peak flew from India where it had formed part of a holy mountain. These are of particular interest to Buddhists and those who have a love of sculpture and art.

Another natural spectacle to be found here is the tidal bore of the Qiantang River that has enthralled people for centuries.

Major Scenic Sites

Ten Views of West Lake

Spring Dawn at Sudi Causeway
Lotus in the Breeze at Crooked Courtyard
Autumn Moon on Calm Lake
Melting Snow at Broken Bridge
Listening to Orioles Singing in the Willows
Viewing Fish at Flowers Harbor
Sunset Glow over Leifeng Hill
Twin Peaks Piercing the Clouds
Evening Bell at Nanping Hill
Three Pools Mirroring the Moon

Ten-odd New Views of West Lake

Cloud Dwelling and Bamboo Path
Rains of Sweet-scented Osmanthus Over Hills
Dream Spring of Hupao
Tea-tasting at Dragon Well
Trees in Mist by the Nine Rivulets
Heaven Wind over Wushan Mountain
Ruan Mound in Green
Yellow Dragon Spitting Greenness
Scud over Yuhuang
Gem Bathed in Flowing Rosy Clouds

Other Attractions Around the Place

Plant Kindom
Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen
Yuewang Tomb Temple

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

西湖
West Lake

自然概况

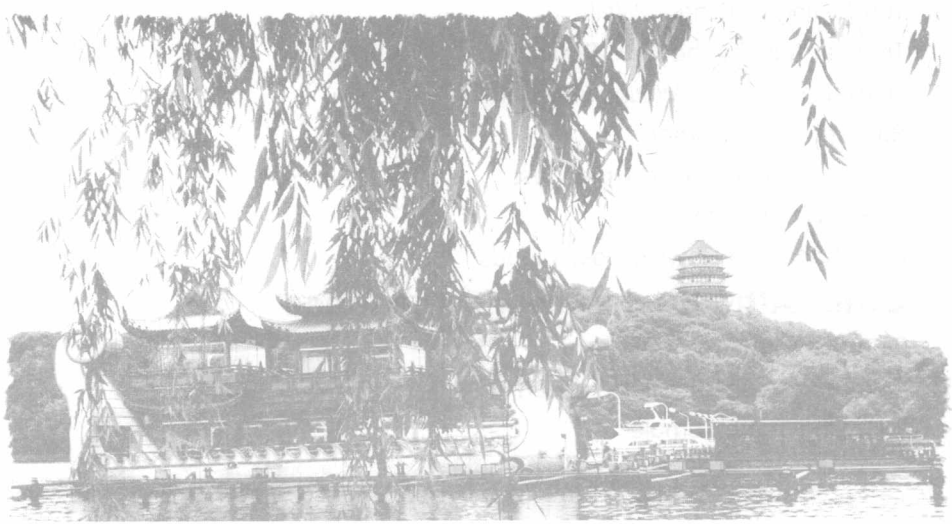
位于浙江省省会杭州的西湖是中国最著名的旅游风景区之一。几个世纪以来，西湖一直以它秀丽清雅的湖光山色与璀璨丰蕴的文化古迹而闻名于世。

西湖风景区包括西湖本身以及周围的丘陵山峰和附近的历史遗迹。西湖的面积为60平方公里，其中湖面为5.68平方公里。

风景区以秀丽的西湖为中心，三面环山，山色葱茏，逶迤绵延。沿湖地带垂柳飘拂，绿荫环抱，另有许多古代石桥跃于湖上。层层烟雾或笼罩整个景区，或只是轻轻地漂浮于周边绿色葱茏的山峰间，山脚下潺潺溪水蜿蜒流入深谷。

西湖风景区里有90多处各具特色的公园和风景点，其中有南宋定名的“西湖十景”和1985年评出的“新西湖十景”，将西湖连缀成了色彩斑斓的大花环，使其春夏秋冬各有景色，晴雨风雪各有情致。

西湖不但独擅山水秀丽之美，林壑幽深之胜，而且还有丰富的文物古迹和优美动人的神话传说，将自然、人文、历史、艺术巧妙地融合在了一起。



教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

由于其悠久的历史和历史上的重要地位，西湖古迹遍布，拥有国家重点文物保护单位5处，省级文物保护单位35处，市级文物保护单位25处，还有39处文物保护点和各类专题博物馆点缀其中，为之增色。

目前，整个风景区有100多处风景点向游客开放。每年，有50万外国游客和1 200万国内游客来杭州观光旅游。

1999年，西湖被列为“全国十大美丽风景示范点”。

特别提醒

这里还有一些颇具特色的景点值得特别一提：在外西湖中央的南部有一个人工岛叫做小洋岛，又名小疯洲，它包围了四个小湖。从这个小岛上，人们在夜晚点亮了突出水面的石灯笼中的蜡烛以营造出三个月亮反照的画面，就可以观赏到三潭印月，尤其是在中秋之夜，景色更为神奇。

孤山岛位于外西湖和北里湖之间，是一个理想的闲眺西湖秀色的地方。不远处的双峰插云又是一处令人赞叹的景观，尤其是当人们泛舟湖上时观来更美。

在西湖的西北面，在飞来峰与北高峰之间的灵隐山麓中，坐落着著名古刹灵隐寺。传说飞来峰的石灰岩峰顶是从佛教圣地印度飞过来的，所以才使得这座山麓极为神圣。佛教徒们以及那些喜爱雕刻艺术的人们对这里有着尤其浓厚的兴趣。

这里还有一处自然景观，即钱塘江大潮涌。几个世纪以来它一直令众多游人着迷。

主要景点

西湖十景：

苏堤春晓
平湖秋月
柳浪闻莺
雷峰夕照
南屏晚钟
曲苑风荷
断桥残雪
花港观鱼
双峰插云
三潭印月

新西湖十景：

云栖竹径
虎跑梦泉
九溪烟树
阮墩环碧
玉皇飞云
满陇桂雨
龙井问茶
吴山天风
黄龙吐翠
宝石流霞

周边名胜

植物王国
灵隐佛国
岳王墓庙

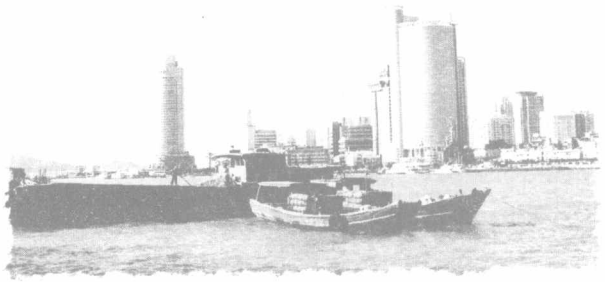
教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

鼓浪屿
Gu Lang Yu

Natural Features

Gulangyu Island is located just southwest of Xiamen City. Visitors can reach it by steamship from Xiamen City in about 5 minutes. Gulangyu Island is renowned for its delicate natural beauty, its ancient relics, and its varied architecture. The island is on China's list of National Scenic Spots, one of the 35 key National Scenic Spots and also ranks at the top of the 10 most-scenic areas in Fujian Province.

During the Ming Dynasty, the island was called "Yuanshazhou Island". It got its present name from the huge reef surrounding it. When the tide comes in, the waves pound the reef and it sounds like the beating of a drum. Thus the island came to be named "Gulangyu". Gu in Chinese means "drum", and Lang "waves".



During the later Ming Dynasty, the troops of national hero Zheng Chenggong were stationed here. After the Opium War in 1842, 13 countries including Great Britain, France, America, Germany and Japan established consulates, churches, hospitals, banks and schools here, turning the island into a common concession. In 1942, Japan occupied the island until the end of the War of Resistance against Japan.

Gulangyu Island has about 20 000 permanent residents, all of whom enjoy a

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

comfortable, relaxing life. Only electric-powered vehicles are permitted on the island, so the environment is free from the noise and pollution of combustion engines. Breathing the clean air, appreciating the ever-present green trees and lovely flowers, anyone here can feel like they are in heaven. With classical and romantic European-style architecture, the island truly deserves to be called the "Architecture Museum". It is also known as the "Cradle of Musicians" and "Island of Music" because of its reputation for music appreciation.

The Island Ring Road, which circles the island, allows you to fully enjoy all the sights of this small but charming island.

Special Mention

At the foot of Sunlight Rock stands the Memorial Hall of Zheng Chenggong, built in honor of the hero's feats which include expelling the Dutch colonists and reoccupying Taiwan. Wandering up the steep rock path, visitors will see many profound inscriptions left by poets, the oldest of which dates back to over 400 years. This is the main cultural sight on the hill. Continuing on, you will see the preserved training grounds of Zheng Chenggong's troops. Near the field is a huge rock bridging two cliffs, forming a natural entrance to a cave. This is called "Old Summer Cave" (Gu Bi shu Dong) where you can feel a pleasant cool breeze. It's the perfect viewing spot to appreciate the scenery of Gulangyu Island. A fantastic panorama of Xiamen City, including Nanputuo Temple, Xiamen University, Hulishan Battery, etc. is within view.

Major Scenic Sites

Sunlight Rock
Bright Moon Garden
Memorial Hall of Zheng Chenggong
Shuzhuang Garden
Xiamen Museum

Other Attractions Around the Place

Seasight Watch Garden
Hulishan Battery
Wu Lao Peak
Fantian Temple
Yuyuan Park
Xiamen Bridge
Wan Shi (Ten Thousand Rocks) Mountain
Tianzhushan Forest Park

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

鼓浪屿
Gu Lang Yu

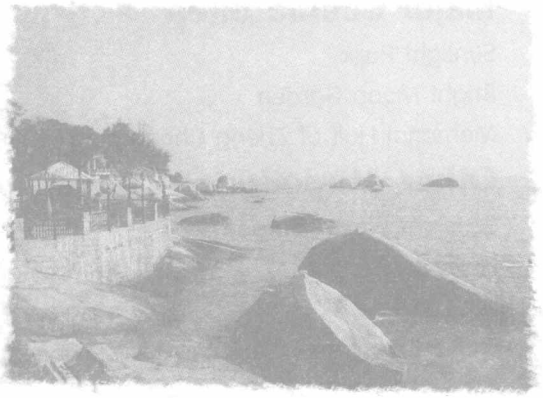
自然概况

鼓浪屿位于厦门市的西南方。游客们从厦门市区乘汽船大约五分钟就可抵达。鼓浪屿因其婀娜多姿的自然风光，积淀深厚的名人史迹和形态各异的万国建筑而闻名于世，成为国家重点风景名胜区。它还是全国35个王牌风景区之一，居福建省十佳风景区之首。

明朝时期，鼓浪屿还是一个水草丰茂、渺无人烟的小岛，名“圆沙洲”。因周围巨大的海礁受到海浪的阵阵冲击，发出犹如擂鼓的声音，故后改名为“鼓浪”屿。也就是说，在中文里，“鼓”指的是“擂鼓”，“浪”指的是“海浪”。

明朝末年，民族英雄郑成功曾屯兵鼓浪屿训练水师。1842年鸦片战争之后，包括英国、法国、美国、德国和日本在内的13个国家先后在岛上设立领事馆，并建起了教堂、医院、洋行和学校，将小岛沦为公共租界。1942年，日本占领了小岛，直到抗日战争结束才离开。

鼓浪屿上约有两万居民。人们生活舒适，修身养性。在这里，除了环岛旅游电瓶车外，不许任何其他机动车辆上岛。所以，这里没有噪音，没有空气污染。每一位到访的游客都能呼吸到清新的空气，欣赏到四季常春的绿树古木、红花碧草，感觉像是到了天堂一样！一座座古典雅致的欧式建筑，把小岛真的建成了一座“万国建筑博览城”。鼓浪屿还被誉为“音乐家的摇篮”和“音乐之岛”，因为这里的人们酷爱音乐，酷爱钢琴，享有盛誉。



现在，岛上新建了环岛路。环小岛游一周，人们可以尽情地领略小岛的所有美好风光。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

在日光岩的山脚下坐落着民族英雄郑成功纪念馆。此馆为纪念他为驱逐荷兰殖民者和收复台湾所做出的贡献而建。沿着陡峭的石径拾级而登，游客们可以观赏到许多古代诗人留下的寓意深奥的题词石刻，其中年代最久的可以追溯到400多年前。这里是日光岩文化遗迹的主要荟萃地。

当人们继续拾级而上时，还可以看到当年郑成功训练水师的训练场遗址。训练场旁边有一块连接两座峭壁的巨石，被称为“一片瓦”巨石嵌空，形成进入殿堂（庵洞）的天然入口通道。这里叫做“古避暑洞”，里面凉爽惬意，微风习习。登临绝顶，山海奇观，风光无限：厦门市区，南普陀寺，厦门大学，胡里山炮台，大担、二担诸岛尽收眼底。

主要景点

日光岩
皓月园
郑成功纪念馆
菽庄花园
厦门博物馆

周边名胜

毓园
南普陀景区：华侨博物馆，南普陀寺
集美景区
厦门大桥
天竺山森林公园
胡里山炮台
五老峰
万石山
梵天寺

太湖
Taihu Lake

Natural Features

Located in the southern part of the Yangtze River delta, Taihu Lake is the third largest fresh water lake in China. With a surface area of about

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

2 338 square kilometers (about 902 square miles), Taihu Lake is a famous scenic spot in China and is famed for its lake, its hills and its splendid man-made scenery.

Taihu Lake is just like a bright pearl set in the Yangtze River delta. It crosses Jiangsu and Zhejiang provinces, where 48 islets of different sizes and 72 peaks and peninsulas along the lake combine to form a panorama of great natural beauty. The best place to view the beautiful Taihu Lake is on the Turtle Head Islet. Turtle Head Islet is an islet stretching into the lake, whose shape is really like the head of a turtle protruding from the water. Taihu Lake and the surrounding magnificence will bewitch your eyes when you climb onto Turtle Head. When the soft breezes blow, waves roll and the hills in the distance look like an overlapping landscape painting. The scene is really captivating.



Besides the natural scenery of Taihu Lake, there are many ruins of historic sites, such as the Grand Canal of the Sui Dynasty, the Islets in the lake along with the coastal places in the east, the north and the west, both of which are the cradle land of the culture of Wuyue (this culture touches on traditions that flow from or refer to Jiangsu, Zhejiang and the southeast part of Anhui Province today) and so on.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Taihu Lake is an abundant source of fish. Traveling there, you can taste the famous delicious food known as "Taihu Lake Three Whites", including white shrimp, white bait and white fish. The feast is generally prepared in the boat as one floats on the placid waters of Taihu Lake. It is very well worth a visit.

Special Mention

Turtle Head Islet Park is mainly made of the natural landscape, augmented by man-made additions. Flowers and trees can be seen everywhere. Various kinds of architecture are strategically placed among the trees and shrubs. All conspire to make the park graceful and elegant.

Plum Garden is located five kilometers (3 miles) west of the city of Wuxi. It has long been known as one of the best places for viewing plum blossoms in Jiangsu. The garden backs onto Dragon Mountain in the north and faces Taihu Lake in the south. The three elements—mountains, water, and plum blossoms—are combined to create picturesque scenery that fully represents the profound culture of Chinese plum blossom.

Liyuan Garden is in southwest Wuxi, and is surrounded on three sides by Wuli Lake. It is one of the most famous gardens for lake scenery in China. The garden derived its name from the alternative name for the Lake which is "Lihu". Legend has it that 2 400 years ago Grand Master Fanli helped Goujian, the Duke of Yue, eliminate the state of Wu. He then took the wise move of stepping down and returning to the seclusion of Wuli Lake together with Xishi, a stunning beauty. Thus, Wuli Lake was renamed Lihu Lake later.

Major Scenic Sites

Turtle Head Islet
Turtle Head Islet Park
Plum Garden
Liyuan Garden
Xihui Park
Wu Culture Garden

Other Attractions Around the Place

Three Kingdoms City
Tangcheng City
European City
Lingshan Buddha

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

太湖
Taihu Lake

自然概况

位于长江三角洲南部的太湖是我国第三大淡水湖。湖面面积约为2 338平方公里(约902平方英里)。太湖是中国著名的旅游风景区,其盛誉主要来自湖水,山峰以及其美妙无比的人造风景。

太湖犹如长江三角洲上的一颗明珠,它横跨江苏、浙江两省,湖中大小各异的48座岛屿以及72座沿湖半岛山峰组成了一幅幅巨大的风景连环画。观赏太湖风景的绝佳处在鼋头渚。鼋头渚位于太湖之滨的充山西端,因有石渚形如鼋头伸入湖中,故称为鼋头渚。登上鼋头,太湖风光以及周围的美丽壮观之景将令你眼花缭乱。微风吹过,波浪汹涌,此起彼伏;远处的山峰犹如一幅重叠有序的风景画。这里的景色着实令人流连忘返。

除了太湖的自然风光以外,这里还有许多历史文物的遗迹,如隋朝的大运河,太湖东部、北部和西部之滨的一些岛屿都被称为吴越文化的诞生地(这种文化指的是源于或产生于如今江苏、浙江以及安徽东南部分的文化)等等。

太湖富产鱼虾。到这里旅游的人们可以品尝到著名的美味佳肴——太湖三白,即白虾,银鱼和白鱼。这顿丰盛的水产食物通常就在船上烹制。在你尽情漂游在平静的水面上时,美味佳肴也随之做出,的确值得一游。

特别提醒

鼋头渚公园是一个以天然山水为主,人工修饰为辅的园林。这里,花木扶疏,郁郁葱葱;绿树丛中,又有许多形状各异的园林建筑点缀其间,整个公园景色秀丽多姿。



梅园位于无锡市西面5公里(3英里)处,是江苏省久有盛誉的观赏梅花最佳地之一。梅园后依北面的龙山,前濒南面的太湖。这里,由山峰、湖水和梅花三位一体,营造出一幅充分体现中国梅花深厚文化的风景画。

蠡园在无锡的西南面,三面由五里湖环绕,是中国最著名的湖水风景公园之一。蠡园因蠡湖而得名,而蠡湖、蠡园又皆

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

因著名历史人物范蠡而得名。传说2 400年前越国大夫范蠡助越灭吴后，明智地脱离朝政，与美人西施隐居泛舟在五里湖上。后人为纪念此事，把五里湖改名为蠡湖。

主要景点

鼋头渚	鼋头渚公园
梅园	蠡园
锡惠公园	吴文化公园

周边名胜

三国城	唐城
欧洲城	灵山大佛

周庄
Zhouzhuang

Natural Features

Zhouzhuang, one of the most famous water townships in China, situated in Kunshan City which is only 30 kilometers (18 miles) southeast of Suzhou. It is noted for its profound cultural background, the well preserved ancient residential houses, the elegant watery views and the strong local colored traditions and customs. In the Spring and Autumn Period, Zhouzhuang was a part of the fief Yaocheng and called Zhenfengli. After being donated to Full Fortune (Quanfu) Temple by Zhou Digong, a very devout Buddhist, in 1086 during the Northern Song Dynasty, Zhouzhuang got its present name as a memorial of the donor.



In an area of half a square kilometer (124 acres), 60 percent of the Zhouzhuang's structures were built during the Ming and Qing Dynasties, which is from 1368 to 1911.

Zhouzhuang is surrounded and divided by lakes and rivers, 14 stone bridges cross the rivers, showing distinctive views of the water-town. Twin Bridges which comprise Shide Bridge and Yongan Bridge are the most famous and is considered the symbol

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

of Zhouzhuang. Built in Wanli era (1573 ~ 1619) of the Ming Dynasty, Twin Bridges is in the northeast of the town. Shide Bridge is east-west and has a round arch, while Yongan Bridge is north-south and the bridge arch is square. Crossing the two crisscross rivers and connecting at the middle, Twin Bridges look like a Chinese old-style Chinese key. In 1984, 38 canvases of the notable painter, Chen Yifei, were exhibited in a New York gallery. Memory of Hometown' which depicts Twin Bridges was one of the items on display and has gained the world's attention for Zhouzhuang. The painting was chosen to be the first-day cover of the United Nations' postage stamp in 1985.

Besides these historic sights, the local folklore, traditions and legends of this water township, such as the dragon boat race, the granny tea or the Wansan home-style banquet which are formed from the immemorial civilization and history are also the indispensable elements for an unforgettable tour.

Special Mention

The first person thinking of showing visitors around the town in boats is an old granny named Wang Xiaomei at the beginning of the 1990s. She is not a zhouzhuang native. She came from Shandong Province and used to be a fisherman. She was still rowing a boat at the age of 82 in 1997 (but not now). She said she got the idea of starting tourism in Zhouzhuang out of her poor life then. However, Zhouzhuang's tourism at present has been quickly developed into more than 60 sight-seeing boats. Among them, old Wang Xiaomei's boat is very distinctive. It is the only boat on water that uses double oars. Quite a few TV stations rented her boat to make films and invited her to be the tour guide. Nowadays, water tourism is flourishing in all water towns, therefore, Wang Xiaomei can be regarded as the initiator of the whole practice.

The quiet and peaceful night view in water townships is special and unique. Owing to the crisscross rivers and lakes all around, one can get into the town only by crossing those highly arched bridges. Therefore, there is no motorized vehicles to be seen in the whole town. Some residents have to push their motorcycles across the bridges to get home with great difficulty. That's why the water township is always extremely quiet at night.

Major Scenic Sites

Twin Bridges
Fuan Bridge
Shen House

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Zhang House
Full Fortune (Quanfu) Temple
Chengxu Taoist Temple
Milou Tower

Other Attractions Around the Place

Tongli Township

周庄
Zhouzhuang

自然概况

周庄，中国最著名的水乡之一，位于苏州城东南 30 公里（18 英里）处的昆山境内。它以其深厚的文化底蕴，保存完好的古宅建筑，明媚秀丽的水上景色以及浓郁的地方特色风情而闻名于世。春秋战国时期，周庄只是尧城封地的一部分，称作贞丰里。在北宋年间的 1086 年，一个非常虔诚的佛教徒周迪功舍田宅 200 余亩捐于当地全福寺，为纪念捐赠人因有周庄之称。



在周庄这片总计有 0.5 平方公里（124 英亩）的土地上，百分之六十的建筑都是建于明清时期。周庄镇内小河湖溪纵横交错，窄直的河道上横卧着 14 座石桥，尽显水乡小镇特有的景色。

周庄的双桥即为张厅往北在河道交汇之处的圆拱桥（世德桥）和方孔桥（永安桥）的联袂桥梁，是周庄的象征。双桥横跨两条交叉的河流并在中间地段相汇，看上去就像中国古代风格的钥匙，故俗称为钥匙桥。1984 年，著名美籍华人画家陈逸飞有 38 幅油画在纽约一家画廊展出，其中那幅名作《故乡的回忆》的创作素材即取之于此，于是水乡风光举世闻名，双桥也成为周庄的象征。这幅油画被选用于联合国 1985 年的邮票首日封。

除了那些历史古迹外，周庄水乡的当地民俗，故事传说，如龙舟赛，奶奶茶，万三家宴等都形成了远古时期的文明和历史，也是一次难忘观光中不可或缺的内容成分。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

90年代初，在周庄第一个想起驾着小船带客人在镇内观光的是一位名叫王小妹的老奶奶。老人祖籍山东，原来是打渔的。1997年已经82岁的她还在摇船，她说当时她想搞旅游，是因为生活困难。现在周庄的旅游船只已经发展到了60多只，但是王小妹的船一眼就可以看出，因为别的船都是摇橹，唯独她一条船用的是双桨。很多电视台拍片时都租用她的船，沿途由她负责讲解。现在所有的水镇都开展了水上旅游，所以也可以说，她是水上旅游的发起人。

宁静的水乡夜色别有一番情趣。由于水镇的四周都是小河，只有通过高高的拱桥才能进到镇当中，所以镇子里至今还不能走机动车，镇中居民家中的摩托车也只能推过桥回到家中。所以每到傍晚，水镇总是显得格外的寂静。

主要景点

双桥，富安桥，沈厅，张厅，全福寺，澄虚道院，迷楼

周边名胜

同里镇



徐州的“汉代三绝”
Three Superb Pieces of Han Dynasty in Xuzhou

Natural Features

Xuzhou (in northern Jiangsu), known as Pengcheng in ancient times, is a famous cultural city with a history of more than 4 000 years. China's six-thousand-year-long civilization also left numerous treasures to Xuzhou, especially the Terracotta Warriors and Horses of Han Dynasty, Tombs of Han Dynasty and Stone Sculptures of Han Dynasty are reputed as Xuzhou's Three Superb Pieces of Han Dynasty.

The Lion Hill Tomb in Xuzhou is for Liu Wu, the third Prince of Chu who lived in the early Western Han Dynasty. The terracotta warriors and horses discovered 300 meters away to the west of the Tomb represent the army forces protecting the Tomb. It is believed that the Xuzhou Terracotta Warriors and Horses of Han Dynasty which was discovered in December 1984, is another significant discovery after

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Xi'anTerracotta Warriors and Horses of Qin Dynasty. As the funerary objects of Prince of Chu, more than 4 000 pieces of the Terracotta Warriors and Horses have been unearthed and with vivid expression and bold outline, they are of high artistic value. The Xuzhou Museum of the Terracotta Warriors and Horses of Han Dynasty is built on the original site of the discovery, occupying an area of 20 400 square meters. Clay figures of warriors of various forms are laid in an orderly manner inside six pits representing an underground army full of power and grandeur.

The Tortoise Hill Tomb is on the west of the Hill in Jiulishan Economic Development Zone in Xuzhou. It is the tomb for Liu Zhu and his wife, the sixth Prince and Princess of Chu State. It is 83 meters long and 33 meters wide, covering an area of more than 700 square meters, and consists of 15 tomb chambers. Everything needed in daily life is found in the bedroom, dinning room, stable and kitchen which can still be seen in what is essentially a splendid underground palace.

The construction of the tomb is a matter of wonder since the tomb was dug from two opposite directions and joined inside the middle of the hill. It is hard to understand how the builders at that time calculated so precisely (with the maximum deviation of 5 millimeters) without any modern equipment. Every passage of the tomb is blocked up by 26 blocks of stone, each of which is as heavy as 6 or 7 tons. Such a carefully dug and polished gigantic tomb project is a superb piece of art and a tribute to ancient Chinese craftsmen.

The Stone Sculptures of Tombs of Han Dynasty are typical decorative patterns in the tombs of Han Dynasty. So far, more than 20 tombs with stone sculptures have been discovered in Xuzhou, among which Maocun and Baiji Tombs are famous. The substantial contents and sculptures make them very special.

Xuzhou is the place where most of stone sculptures of Han Dynasty have been found, and up to now more than 700 sculpture stones have been unearthed. With an area of 10 000 square meters, Xuzhou Gallery of Stone Sculptures of Han Dynasty is a complex of buildings in the Han-Tang-style. It is a special museum established to collect, display and study the stone sculptures of Han Dynasty, with more than 500 precious sculpture stones preserved. From the sculptures, we can see not only the rich people's rejoicing in fairyland and luxury in mortal life, but also the common people's work and life. A visit to Gallery of Stone Sculptures of Han Dynasty will be like traveling in the historic painted corridor where inspiration, knowledge and artistic treat can be obtained.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Special Mention

Composed of 9 hilltops, Yunlong Mountain (cloud-dragon mountain) got its name from the fact that it looks like a dragon wriggling in the clouds. It is verdant and luxuriant with big pines and cypresses providing shade from the sun, and is dotted with terraces and pavilions in between the hills. Su shi, the famous poet in the Song Dynasty once wrote about the splendid scenery of Yunlong Mountain in his On Fanghe Pavilion (the Pavilion where cranes were set free): "When the spring turns into summer, green grass and trees stretch into the far horizon; while in autumn and snow winter, whiteness covers everything. On the hilltop wet and windy, dark and bright I overlook the constant change," Su shi wrote. There are many tourist interests on the top of Yunlong Mountain, such as Fanghe Pavilion, Stone Bed of Su shi, Xinghua Temple, Kwan-yin Rock, Woniu Fountain, Yunlong Academy, Sight-seeing Platform, etc. and in recent years many other new things were established and attracted many visitors both home and abroad.

Another special tourist site in Xuzhou is the Monument to Martyrs of Huaihai Campaign as well as a grand 3D Memorial Hall.

Facing to the south, the Monument is situated on the slope of the hill, standing in the axes of the park with a height of 38.15 meters. The gold-plating inscriptions by Chairman Mao Zedong are set in the front of the monument, which is enclosed by cloisters and pavilions. In the marble wall of the south and north cloisters, the inscriptions by the leaders and the names of the martyrs are engraved. The relief sculptures on the base of the monument depicts the grand scenes of the battlefields of the Huaihai Campaign.

Major Scenic Sites

Terracotta Warriors and Horses of Han Dynasty
The Tortoise Hill Tomb of Han Dynasty
The Stone Sculptures of Tombs of Han Dynasty
The Horsemanship Watching Stage
Xuzhou Museum
Xuzhou's Han City
Monument to Martyrs of Huaihai Campaign
Memorial Hall of Huaihai Campaign
Yunlong Mountain
Yunlong Lake
Yunlong Park

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Other Attractions Around the Place

Sites of Huaihai Campaign
Han City in Peixian County

徐州的“汉代三绝”
Three Superb Pieces of Han Dynasty in Xuzhou

自然概况

位于江苏省北部的徐州，旧时称作“彭城”，是一座有着4 000多年历史的文化名城。同时，中国6 000年的文明史也给徐州留下了无数文物古迹，尤其是汉兵马俑、汉墓和汉画像石被誉为徐州的“汉代三绝”。

徐州狮子山楚王陵是西汉第三代楚王刘戊的陵墓，位于其西侧300米远的汉兵马俑是它的一个组成部分，象征着卫戍楚王陵的部队，两处遗址距今已有2 100余年的历史。1984年12月，在徐州东郊狮子山西麓，发现了埋藏于地下2 000多年共计4 000余件的西汉彩绘兵马俑，这是我国继陕西咸阳汉兵马俑、西安秦始皇兵马俑之后的又一重大发现。徐州汉兵马俑数量多，种类齐全，姿势和服饰也有区别，造型考究，雕刻线条明快，生动传神，并根据不同人物的身份塑造情态。这支象征着卫戍楚王陵墓的部队分布于六条俑坑，由步兵、车兵和骑兵组成。

徐州龟山汉墓位于徐州市九里山经济技术开发区内的龟山西麓，为西汉第六代楚王襄王刘铢（即位于公元前128年～前116年）的夫妻合葬墓。此墓为两座并列相通的墓，其中南为楚襄王刘铢墓，北为其夫人墓。两墓均为横穴崖洞式，墓葬开口处于龟山西麓，成喇叭形状，有南北两墓道，墓室由人工开凿而成。每条甬道长56米，高1.78米，宽1.06米，沿中线开凿最大偏差仅有5毫米，精确度达到了1/10 000。南北甬道之间相距19米，夹角为20秒，误差是1/16 000。甬道地平面，内外高低相差527毫米，呈10/1 000的自然坡度，是迄今世界上打凿精度最高的甬道。每条甬道由26块塞石分上下两层堵塞，每层13块，每块塞石重6～7吨。墓室15间，室室相通，大小配套，主次分明，墓葬东西全长83米，南北最宽处达33米，总面积达700余平方米，容积达到2 600多立方。此墓工程浩大，雕凿精细，气势雄伟，实为世界罕见，中华一绝。

汉画像石是汉代陵墓中独特的装饰物品。迄今为止，徐州已经发现了20余座汉代陵墓里的画像石，其中数茅村和白集两地的最为出名。这些汉画像石雕刻浑

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

厚有力，画风质朴简洁，具有很高的艺术欣赏价值。

徐州是中国汉画像石集中分布地之一。徐州汉画像石艺术馆是收藏、陈列、研究汉画像石的专题性博物馆。该博物馆占地 10 000 平方米，收藏珍品汉画像石 500 余块，由当代艺术大师李可染先生题写馆牌，于 1989 年 10 月 1 日建成开放。

徐州汉画像石除了其雕刻艺术精湛：雕刻技法有阴线刻、浅浮雕两种；线刻细腻真切，有阴柔之丽，浮雕浑雄苍健，有阳刚之美外，其内容也精彩丰富，真实地再现了汉代政治、经济、文化、信仰等各个方面。精美的雕刻，使它在中国美术史中占有重要的位置。参观徐州汉画像石艺术馆，犹如置身于瑰丽的历史画廊之中，能给你带来知识的启迪和艺术的享受。

特别提醒

云龙山是江苏苏北一带的名山，是徐州自然风景区重要风景山林之一。山上巨石嶙峋，林壑幽美。云龙山由九节山头组成，南北走向，蜿蜒如龙，因山上常有云雾缭绕而得名。云龙山长 3 公里，北头毗连市区，海拔 142 米，易于攀登游览。宋代苏东坡在徐州为太守时，常登山览胜，醉卧山石，他书写的“放鹤亭记”碑文现仍存山中。如今，山上满布松柏，四季常青，山顶建有亭廊，供人休息。山上主要风景有放鹤亭，招鹤亭，饮鹤泉，碑廊；东麓兴化寺内有大石佛，西麓大士岩有石造观音像，云龙书院内有东坡石床，黄茅岗摩崖石刻。现又将一些古迹整修一新，重建了卧牛泉，扩大了招鹤亭平台，更为云龙山增添了新姿，成为中外客人来徐州的必游之地。

淮海战役烈士纪念塔位于徐州市区东南部的凤凰山东麓。纪念塔高 38.15 米，塔的上端雕刻着由五角星、步枪和松子绸带组成的塔徽。塔身正面镶嵌着毛主席当年亲笔题写的“淮海战役烈士纪念塔”镏金大字。塔座反面镌刻着镏金碑文，记述着淮海战役的历史经过以及烈士们前赴后继，广大群众奋勇支援前线的英勇事迹。

主要景点

汉代三绝：汉兵马俑，龟山汉墓，汉画像石

云龙山	云龙湖	云龙公园
戏马台	徐州汉城	徐州博物馆
淮海战役烈士纪念碑	淮海战役烈士纪念馆	

周边名胜

淮海战役战场旧址

沛县汉城

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙



游览旅游城——南京
Traveling in a Tourist City—Nanjing

Natural Features

1. Dr. Sun Yat-sen's Mausoleum

Covering an area of 80 000 square meters, Dr. Sun Yat-sen's Mausoleum is located in the Zhongshan Mountain Scenic Area in the east suburb of Nanjing City Jiangsu Province.

Dr. Sun Yat-sen (1866 ~ 1925) was a great forerunner of the Chinese democratic revolution and led by Dr. Sun the Chinese people brought down the corrupt rule of the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911) and ended 2 000 years of the feudal monarchy system, which led the Chinese peoples in to a new age.

The majestic Mausoleum construction was started in 1926 and completed in 1929. The whole Mausoleum Scenic Area represents an alarm bell as seen from the air, symbolizing the noble spirit and heroic efforts of Dr. Sun Yat-sen's devotion to the Chinese people, fight of oppression and winning the independence of China. Facing south, the structures, along with the mountain ascends gradually along with the central axis line running from south to the north and is regarded as the most outstanding mausoleum in Chinese modern architectural history.

Traveling along the marble road, firstly you will arrive at half-moon square in the south of the Mausoleum. It is understated and modest, while endowing grandeur to the Mausoleum. Then at the entrance to the Mausoleum stands the great marble Paifang (memorial archway) on which is written "Bo Ai" meaning "love" Through the Paifang there is a passage of 480 meters long and 40 meters wide, on both sides of which stand orderly pine and cypresses trees. Continuing forward to the end of the passage, there is the Frontispiece, standing some 16.5 meters high and 27 meters wide. The Frontispiece has 3 archways, each of which has a pair of symmetrical enchased copper gates. 4 Chinese characters are inscribed on the lintel over the doorways written by Dr. Sun Yat-sen meaning "the world is commonwealth" which fully explains the cause he struggled for during his life. Through the Frontispiece is a pavilion made of marble, in which a great stele, 9 meters high

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

and 4 meters wide, was erected by Kuomintang in memory of Dr. Sun Yat-sen. On the stele there are carved just 24 Chinese characters and no epitaph as people think that there are no words capable of representing this giant of modern China.



Through the Pavilion, climbing along the stairs upward, the Sacrificial Hall is your next encounter. Here is the highest place of the Mausoleum, some 158 meters high. The Sacrificial Hall is located in the center of this plateau. It is an Alhambresque construction combining the architectures of both China and the West and is 30 meters long, 25 meters wide and 29 meters high. Around the Sacrificial Hall, there are two 12.6-meter-high Huabiao, ornamental columns like those in Tiananmen Square. Entering the Hall, a 4.6-meter-high stone statue of Dr. Sun Yat-sen sits in the center. Dr. Sun wears long gown with eyes facing forward, with an open book on his lap, demonstrating the wisdom of the great thinker. At the foot of the statue, there are 6 embossments exhibiting in vivid pictures Dr. Sun Yat-sen's glorious life and struggles in his revolution of China. The door of the tomb is in the center of the back wall. The whole tomb is a hemispherical in shape, with the marble coffin of Dr. Sun Yat-sen set in the center of the chamber. His white marble statue rests atop the rectangle coffin, under which this historical giant forever sleeps.

2. Ming Xiaoling Mausoleum

Ming Xiaoling Mausoleum is one of the biggest imperial tombs in China. It lies in the eastern suburbs of Nanjing City at the southern foot of Zhongshan (Purple) Mountain. Emperor Chengzu, Zhu Yuanzhang, the first emperor of the Ming Dynasty (1368 ~ 1644) and Queen Ma were buried there.

Construction of the mausoleum began in 1381 and was completed in 1431. In 1384, Queen Ma died and was buried there. Emperor Chengzu had bestowed upon her the title "aueen of Xiao Ci" which means "aueen of Filial Piety and Kindness" Hence, the name Ming Xiaoling derives from her title.

The mausoleum has two discrete sections: one is the Sacred Way area and the other is the main body of the mausoleum itself.

Ming Xiaoling Mausoleum is renowned for its unique design, its eminent status, its amazing beauty and its magnificent scale. It is the milestone in the histori-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

cal development of Chinese mausoleums. As an extension of the mperial Tombs of the Ming and Qing Dynasties, it is listed by UNESCO as a world cultural heritage site.

3. Confucius Temple (Fuzimiao)

The Confucius Temple in Nanjing was originally constructed in the year of 1034 in the Song Dynasty. It was a place to worship and consecrate Confucius, the great philosopher and educator of ancient China. It is also known as Fuzimiao in Chinese. This temple suffered repeated damage and has been rebuilt on several occasions since that time. 1937 was the most destruction when it was burnt to ruin by Japanese aggressors. In 1984 the temple was rebuilt under the support of the local government. During the long process, the original building expanded to be a complex building in the architectural style of the Ming and Qing dynasties, including the Confucius Temple itself, the Jiangnan Gongyuan (the place of imperial examinations) and the Xue Gong (the Imperial Academy). The complex is still called the Confucius Temple out of habit by locals and visitors.

In front of the Confucius Temple, the Qin Huai River is flowing. On the south bank of the river, there is the longest screen wall in China which is 110-meter-long and piled with bricks. The Dacheng Hall is recommended on your trip. It is 16.22 meters high and 28.1 meters wide featuring a 1.5-meter-high pedestal. There are two worthwhile attractions found in the inner hall. One is the largest figure of Confucius in China, the other one is the beautiful collection of 38 vivid panels which are made by various jade, gold and silver, detailing the life of Confucius. Out of the hall, you will see the bronze statue of Confucius as well as the white marble statues of his 8 disciples.

The area around the temple consists of a series of tourist shops, snack bars, restaurants and tea cafes. They all appear to be in the architectural style of the Ming and Qing style. A variety of snacks encompassing 8 of the most famous flavours are available for purchase here. Everyone's individual tastes are well catered for. They are necessary parts of food culture in Nanjing.

4. Zhonghua Gate (Chinese Gate)

Zhonghua Gate is the south gate of Nanjing City. A precious cultural relic, Zhonghua Gate has the double distinction of being the biggest castle-style city gate in China and a structural element of the most complicated castle in the world. It is the castle's magnificent scale, delicate structure, and the great skill with which it was built that bequeath it an important place in China's military and architectural

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

traditions.

Construction of the castle took 21 years, from 1366 to 1387. The gate, originally called the "gate of Gathering Treasure" carries a legend from the time of its creation in the early Ming Dynasty. According to the legend, when Zhu Yuanzhang, the first emperor of the Ming Dynasty, had the gate built, the ground kept sinking. The gate collapsed again and again. It was not until a treasure bowl was buried under the gate that it stood firm. In 1931, to commemorate the revolution of 1911 and the Republic of China (1919 ~ 1949) that emerged as a result, the Gate of Gathering Treasure was renamed Zhonghua Gate. In Chinese Pinyin, Republic of China is written as Zhonghua Minguo.

Nanjing was the capital of China during the Ming Dynasty under the reign of Emperor Zhu Yuanzhang. (Zhu Di, the son of Zhu Yuanzhang moved the capital to Beijing in 1420.) In 1366, Zhu began to build a wall around the city of Nanjing to defend it from attack. The Gate of Gathering Treasure (Zhonghua Gate) was built on the site of a previous gate, the south gate of the city built during the Later Tang Dynasty. The new gate, the grandest among the 13 gates of the new castle, was an architecturally complex structure composed of 3 closed courtyards and 4 arched doors serving as the entrance. There were double paneled wooden doors and with additional stone door set behind. If the enemy broke through the wooden doors, they could be separated and trapped in the 3 closed courtyards upon dropping the stone doors.

27 tunnels were built in the castle to store large quantities of food and weapons and to hold approximately 3 000 soldiers. Wide and steep ramps were built on the east and west side to allow people to carry materials upward. The entire structure was built with massive bricks mortared together with special cement made from lime, sticky rice juice and tung oil. In order to guarantee the quality of the construction, every brick underwent a strict quality control process. The brick makers and builders were ordered to mark their names on each brick. Even today, it is possible to find Chinese characters and numbers on the bricks.

5. Qin Huai River

Qin Huai River, a branch of the great Yangtze River, is 34 kilometers in length and covers a drainage area of 2 631 square kilometers. The river was originally called Huaihe River, and it is said that the river was channeled to the city of Nanjing during the reign of Emperor Qin Shi Huang, so it was named Qin Huai River from then on.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Qin Huai River is the largest river in the Nanjing City area and is the "life blood" of the city. Qin Huai River is so fascinating that it captures the imaginations of people both at home and abroad.

There are many famous sites of interest along the banks of Qin Huai River, including Confucius Temple, Zhanyuan Garden, Zhonghua Gate and the sights along the Taoye Ferry ride to Zhenhuai Bridge.

Qin Huai River is divided into inner and outer rivers. The most frequented place along the inner river is the Confucius Temple. Zhonghua Gate, the largest city door in China as well as the best-preserved and most intricate city door in the world, is also found along the inner river. Finally, there is the Zhanyuan Garden, which was constructed in the Ming Dynasty and is the oldest existing garden in the city.

The outer river resides between Yangjiawan lock and Qin Huai lock. In June 2005, the area was designated by the government as a new tourist route, because it encompasses views of Nanjing City, a city wall from the Ming Dynasty, and the Jiangsu Nanjing TV Tower, etc.. While floating on one of the traditional, recently modernized, painted boats of the region, visitors will have the opportunity to fully appreciate the beautiful sights of the Qin Huai River.

6. Rain Flower Terrace

The Rain Flower Terrace (Yuhua Tai), which is one of the representative scenic spots in Nanjing, is located in the south of the city, occupying an area of 153.7 hecters. The Rain Flower Terrace is rich in historical monuments as well as natural scenery, and presents an irresistible beauty to visitors. The site got its name, Rain Flower terrace, since the Liang Dynasties about 1 400 years ago, when a legendary monk, Yunguang, preached the doctrines of Buddhism here. The monk was so eloquent that the heavenly God was moved by his preach and rain flowers like a shower, hence the name "Rain Flower Terrace". The significance of the Rain Flower Terrace in modern Chinese history is intensified because it was an executive ground of revolutionary martyrs and has been converted into a memorial site. Now, at the scenic spot, there are the solemn and magnificent memorial relics and plants of all kinds decorating the site with green all the year round, needless to mention, the well-known Rain Flower Stones and Rain Flower Tea, therefore, multi-functions of education, recreation and tourism are integrated into the place. The Rain Flower Terrace becomes the National Unit of important Monument Protection, the National Education Base of Patriotism and the National AAAA Tourist Site.

7. Purple Mountain Observatory

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Purple Mountain Observatory is located in Zhongshan Mountain (Purple Mountain) Scenic Area in the east suburb of Nanjing City. Seen from afar, the white domed buildings are shining brightly in the sun. Finished in 1934, it is the earliest and one of the most famous observatories in China. Of milestone significance, it symbolizes the threshold of Chinese modern astronomy.

At the beginning, the observatory enjoyed a great reputation for its splendid architectures, rare apparatus and abundant books. The 60-centimeter-caliber reflecting telescope, the 20-centimeter-caliber refracting telescope (both made in Germany) and the meridian transit made by Swiss were almost the most advanced equipment of the time. And they are still housed in the observatory. Now, it is well equipped with modern facilities used for doing experiments and observing the sun, the moon, the planets, the fixed stars and satellites.

8. The Memorial Hall to the Victims in the Nanjing Massacre

On Dec. 13th, 1937, the Japanese army occupied Nanjing and during the following 6 weeks bore witness to the inhumane disgrace and bloody massacre exerted on the city. No less than 300 000 innocent civilians and unarmed Chinese soldiers were brutally slaughtered in mass and individual beheadings, burying alive, burning, and killing races. More than 20 000 women were raped and many were then killed. A third of the architectures together with their contents were damaged by fire and countless shops, stores and residences were looted and sacked. Corpses were seen floating on rivers and littered the streets and lanes. Whether they were children or the aged, from residents to nuns, few could escape from the savage atrocity.



The Memorial Hall to the Victims in the Nanjing Massacre was built by Nanjing Municipal Government in 1985 and extended in 1995, covering an area of 28 000 square meters. It is located in Jiangdongmen, one of the execution sites and mass burial places of the massacre. Solemn and imposing, the grey marble architecture consists of three parts: the outdoor exhibits, the remaining bones of the victims and the exhibition hall for historical documents. Two marble walls are engraved

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

with the name of the hall and "300,000 Victims" 3 large groups of carved reliefs and 17 small tablets upon which the major sites and historical facts of the massacre are carved, surrounded by withered trees and cobblestones, the wall upon which the names of the victims are listed and the atonement tablet, together form a permanent and moving record of the bloody tragedy.

Special Mention

Nanjing Yangtze River Bridge

For most of its history, Nanjing had to survive without a bridge link across the Yangtze, a difficult river to span, since the water levels rise and fall dramatically and the current is swift. For centuries, the river had always been crossed by ferry. In 1958, Mao Zedong decided a bridge must be built, and it took 8 years to get the bridge opened in 1968.

The bridge is an impressive construction in the northwest of the city. The structure and design of the bridge are particularly impressive. There are 2 decks: the upper level carries vehicles and passengers and the lower carries trains over the huge Yangtze River. The railway part is 6 772 meters long, while the highway part 4 589 meters long, including the main bridge of 1 577 meters long. The architecture and decoration of the bridge are most fascinating, vividly evoking the enthusiasm and patriotism of the 1960s in China. There are 10-meter-high statues of workers, peasants and soldiers in front of each bridge tower, which is the representation of the culture of that time. The bridge towers at both ends of the bridge are 70 meters high, with the three models of red flags on the top.

In order to reduce traffic congestion, the second bridge was built in 1998. 21.197 kilometers in length, it is located 12 kilometers to the first bridge on the lower reaches. Composed by two big bridges over the mainstream and the branch of the Yangtze River, the majority of the bridge passes through an island in the river. After three and half years construction, the second bridge was open to public traffic on March 26th, 2001. It has 6 lanes in two directions.

The third bridge is a key part in the main national highway from Shanghai to Chengdu. Its total length reaches 15.6 kilometers, in which the bridge over the river is 4 744 meters. It is the first one in China to adopt steel structure in cable-stayed bridge tower of steel box girders of the main bridge's two towers. The bridge is designed to be a highway with 6 lanes. It is now finished and being put into operation.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Major Scenic Sites

Dr. Sun Yat-sen's Mausoleum
Ming Xiaoling Mausoleum
Confucius Temple (Fuzimiao)
Zhonghua Gate (Chinese Gate)
Qin Huai River
Rain Flower Terrace
Purple Mountain Observatory
The Memorial Hall to the Victims in the Nanjing Massacre
Nanjing Yangtze River Bridge
Nanjing Museum
Mochou Hu Lake
Xuanwu Hu Lake
Meiling Palace
Linggu Temple
Ming Palace Relics
Jiangnan Gongyuan (the Place of Imperial Examinations)
Xue Gong (the Imperial Academy)
Wuyi Lane
Bailu Zhou Garden
Zhanyuan Garden
Presidential Palace
Meiyuan Xincun
History Museum of Taiping Heavenly Kingdom
Taoye (Peach leaves) Ferry Ride
Zhongshan Botanical Garden

Other Attractions Around the Place

Chunxi ancient street　Tangshan Hot Spring
Qixiashan Mountain　Golden Ox Mountain

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

游览旅游城——南京
Traveling in a Tourist City—Nanjing

自然概况

1. 中山陵

中山陵占地 80 000 平方米，座落于江苏省南京市东郊的钟山风景区。

孙中山是中国民主革命伟大的先驱者，在他的领导下，中国人民推翻了清王朝的腐败统治，结束了 2000 年的封建君主政体，将中国各民族带到了一个崭新的时期。

宏伟庄严的中山陵 1926 年开工建设，于 1929 年建成。从空中看去，整个景区呈警钟形，象征着孙中山先生为中国人民作出的贡献，与压迫者抗争和取得中国独立的崇高精神和英雄行为。陵墓坐北朝南，整个建筑群依山势而建，由南往北沿中轴线逐渐升高，被视为中国现代建筑史上最杰出的陵墓建筑作品。



沿大理石通道前行，首先来到陵墓南部的一个半月形广场。广场在赋庄严予陵墓的同时，也显得简朴、庄重。陵墓入口处有高大的花岗石牌坊，上有中山先生手书的“博爱”两个金字。一条长 480 米，宽 40 米的墓道穿过牌坊，两旁依序耸立着苍松翠柏。继续前行，在墓道的尽头，有一高 16.5 米，宽 27 米的对称铜雕刻三拱形陵门，门额上书孙中山手迹“天下为公”四个大字，充分说明了孙中山先生一生中为之斗争的事业。穿过陵门是一大理石碑亭，内有国民党为纪念孙中山先生而立的一块高约 9 米的碑石，上面仅刻有 24 个汉字，没有墓志铭，因为人们认为，孙中山先生的思想和业绩非文字所能概括。

穿过碑亭，拾梯上行，来到祭堂。这是中山陵最高处，高达 158 米。祭堂位于这最高处的中央，是结合中、西方建筑艺术的仿宫殿式建筑，长 30 米，宽 25 米，高 29 米。祭堂平台上有如同天安门广场上的，高达 12.6 米的华表两座。进入祭堂，

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

中央有中山先生高达4.6米的大理石坐像。先生身着长袍,目视前言,膝上放着一本开页的书卷,向世人展示着这位伟大的思想家的智慧和风采。像座四周有6处反映中山先生光辉一生和革命事迹的浮雕。堂后中央有一重墓门。整个陵墓呈半球状,孙中山先生的大理石汉白玉灵柩落于墓室中央,其汉白玉卧像安卧在长方形灵柩上,下面便安睡着这位历史伟人。

2. 明孝陵

明孝陵是中国古代最大的帝王陵寝之一,坐落在南京东郊的紫金山南麓。明朝(1368~1644)开国皇帝朱元璋和马皇后就葬在这儿。

陵墓的建设始于1381年,于1431年完成。1384年,马皇后去世后葬在这儿。朱元璋曾封予马皇后"孝慈皇后",意为"孝顺和慈爱皇后",此处由此得孝陵之名。

墓区的建筑大体分为两组:第一组神道部分,第二组是主体部分。

明孝陵以其独特的设计、上佳的造型、令人瞠目的优美和宏大的规模而著称。明孝陵是中国陵墓建筑发展史上的里程碑。2003年7月,联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会第27届会议将其作为"明清皇家陵寝"扩展项目而列入《世界遗产名录》。

3. 夫子庙

南京孔庙始建于宋朝1034年,原先是供奉和祭祀中国古代哲学家和教育家孔子的地方。汉语中也称之为夫子庙。自建成后,夫子庙几经损毁和重建,1937年被日本侵略者焚烧,这次的损毁最为惨重。在当地政府的支持下,1984年夫子庙得以重建。在这一反复重建的长期过程中,原先的建筑已扩展为明、清建筑风格的综合建筑群,包括孔庙本身、江南贡院(皇家考试的地方)和学宫(皇家学校)。依据习惯,当地百姓和游客至今仍称这个建筑群为夫子庙。

秦淮河从夫子庙前流过。河南岸有中国最长的照壁。照壁全长110米,用石砖垒成。大成殿高16.22米,宽28.1米,其特色是它的1.5米高的基座。此处应是必游之地。内殿有两处值得一游的景点,一个是中国最大的孔子画像,另一个是悬挂在四周墙壁上的,用各种玉、金、银件成就的38幅反映孔子生平事迹的精美镶嵌壁画集。大殿之外,立着孔子的铜像,其弟子中八位贤人汉白玉塑像分班侍立。

夫子庙周围分布着许多旅游商店、快餐店、餐厅和茶肆。这些建筑也都改建成了明清风格。这儿可以买到号称"秦淮八绝"的8种最为著名的风味小吃。各种口味应有尽有,是南京饮食文化必不可少的组成部分。

4. 中华门

中华门为南京城正南门,是珍贵的文化遗产。中华门城堡是中国现存最大的城堡式瓮城,是世界上结构最复杂的古城堡。中华门以其巨大、雄伟、壮观的规模、复杂的结构和巧妙的设计而著称,在中国军事和建筑史上占有重要地位。

中华门始建于1366年,于1387年完工,前后历时21年。中华门最初叫作"聚

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

宝门”，从明朝初期建造以来，其中便有一个传说：明朝第一个皇帝朱元璋命人建造完这座门时，这儿的地面不断下沉，中华门随建随塌，直到在门下埋下了一只聚宝盆才得以建成。1931 年，为了纪念 1911 年革命运动和中华民国（1919 ~ 1949），聚宝门改名为中华门。

明朝朱元璋皇帝统治时期，南京是中国的首都（朱元璋的儿子惠帝于 1420 年把首都移到北京）。1366 年，朱元璋开始修建环城墙，以防侵扰。聚宝门（中华门）沿用后唐（923 ~ 936）都城的城墙而建。新城堡的 13 道门口以新门为最大，是一座由 3 道瓮城和用作入口的 4 道拱门组成的建筑群。各门都有双扇木门，门后还附有一道石门。敌人攻破木门时，便将石门放下，把敌人截为三段，分别关在 3 道瓮城之中分而歼之，犹如“瓮中捉鳖”。

城堡中建有 27 个藏兵洞，可以贮存大量食物和武器，大约可以埋伏 3 000 名士兵。瓮城东西两则筑有陡峻壮阔的马道，是战时运送军需物资登城的快道。整个建筑采用大砖与石灰、糯米汁和桐油拌合砌成。为了保证建筑质量，每块城砖都经历了严格的检验程序。每块砖上都印有制砖工匠和监造官员的姓名。时至今日，还可能会看到刻有汉字和编号的城砖。

5. 秦淮河



秦淮河是长江的一个支流，全长 34 公里，流域面积为 2 631 平方公里。秦淮河最初叫作淮河，据说是秦始皇统治期间开凿到南京的，从那时起这条河便称为秦淮河。

秦淮河是南京第一大河，也是南京地区最大的一条河流，是这座城市的“生命源泉”。秦淮河十分迷人，使海内外游客心动神移。

秦淮河畔有许多著名的景点，包括夫子庙、瞻园、中华门和从桃叶渡至镇江淮桥一带的秦淮水上游船和沿河景观。

秦淮河分内河和外河，夫子庙是游客常去的内河景点。中国最大的，也是世界上保存最完好，结构最复杂的城堡中华门就在内河边上。瞻园是明朝时期建造的，是南京现存最为古老的园林。

外河位于长江闸和秦淮闸之间。2005 年 6 月，政府将这一地区辟为新的旅游路线，因为它环括了南京景观、一段时城墙和江苏南京电视塔等。乘坐在既古老又摩登，上了彩漆的小船之中在外河上漂流，可以有幸尽情欣赏秦淮河的美丽风光。

6. 雨花台

雨花台是南京标志性旅游景点，位于南京城南，占地 153.7 公顷。雨花台有众

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

多的历史纪念碑和自然景观，诱人的景色美不胜收。雨花台得名于南朝时期。传说当时有位叫云光的法师在此讲授佛经，感动了上天，落花如雨，故称“雨花台”。在中国现代史中，由于这儿是革命先烈英勇就义的地方，雨花台具有了更大的重要意义，并成为革命纪念胜地。如今，这里有气势雄伟，全国规模最大的烈士纪念建筑群和郁郁葱葱的山林，四季应时的花草，还有驰名中外的雨花石和闻名遐迩的雨花茶等，已成为集教育、休闲和旅游为一体的多功能风景名胜区。雨花台是全国重点文物保护单位、全国爱国主义教育示范基地和国家4A级名胜旅游区。

7. 紫金山天文台

紫金山天文台位于南京东郊钟山风景区。远远望去，银白色的圆拱形建筑在阳光下闪闪发光。紫金山天文台建成于1934年，是中国最早的天文台，也是最著名的天文台之一，具有里程碑意义，标志着中国现代天文学的开始。

建成伊始，紫金山天文台以其壮丽的建筑风格、珍贵的仪器设置和丰富的藏书资料而著称。60厘米口径反射式望远镜、20厘米口径拆光式望远镜（均为德国产）和瑞士造子午仪几乎是当时最为先进的仪器。这些仪器依然存放在紫金山天文台里。如今，紫金山天文台已装备了用来做试验和观察太阳、月亮、行星、恒星和卫星的现代化设置。

8. 南京大屠杀遇难同胞纪念馆

1937年12月13日，日本军队占领了南京，在随后的6个星期里，他们对南京人民进行了灭绝人性的血腥屠杀。30万无辜市民和手无寸铁的中国士兵惨遭杀戮、活埋、焚烧和死于日军的杀人竞赛。2万多妇女被强奸，其中许多被奸后杀死。三分之一建筑连同其中的物品都被焚烧，无数店铺、商场和居所惨遭掠夺和洗劫。河面上漂浮着尸体，街道和小巷中也随处可见。不论是儿童还是老人，是居民还是修女，很少有人逃脱这次野蛮的暴行。

1985年，南京市政府修建了南京大屠杀纪念馆，并于1995年将其扩大为占地面积28 000平方米的纪念馆。纪念馆位于侵华日军集体屠杀遗址和遇难同胞丛葬地之一的南京城西江东门。这座庄严肃穆的灰白大理石建筑由3部分组成：外景展区、遇难者遗骨陈列室和史料陈列室。两座大理石墙壁上雕刻着展厅的名称和“死难者300 000”几个大字。枯树、鹅卵石包围之中的3座浮雕群和17块上面刻着这次大屠杀的主要遗址和历史见证事实的小型碑刻、遇难者名单墙和赎罪碑一起，是这次血腥屠杀悲剧的一个永性性记录。

特别提醒

南京长江大桥

南京历史上长时期一直没有跨江桥梁。在长江上架桥十分不易，因为这里的水位升、降幅度巨大，水流湍急。轮渡在长江上穿行了几个世纪。1958年，毛泽东主席决定在长江上建桥，经过8年的建设，南京第一座长江大桥终

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

于在1968年建成通车。

大桥建在南京西北的长江上，是一座十分壮观的建筑。大桥的建筑和设计尤其奇特。大桥共有两层，上层是公路桥，下层是铁路桥。下层的铁路桥全长6 772米，上层的公路桥全长4 589米，包括1 577米长的主桥。大桥的建筑和装饰风格是非常迷人的，生动地体现了20世纪60年代中国人民的热情和爱国主义精神。每座桥头堡前都立着10米高的工农兵雕像，这是当时的文化缩影。大桥两端的桥头堡高达70米，顶端竖着三面红旗。

为了减轻交通堵塞新状况，1998年又在长江上建造了第二座大桥。长江二桥全长21.197公里，位于长江大桥下游12公里处。两座大桥跨过长江主流和支流，大桥的主体跨过一座江中岛。经过3年半的建设，这座双向6车道的长江二桥于2002年3月26日建成通车。

第3座大桥是上海至成都主干国道的一个重要组成部分。这座大桥全长15.6公里，跨江大桥全长4.744公里。主桥采用双塔钢箱梁斜拉桥，桥塔采用钢结构，为国内第一座钢塔斜拉桥。大桥设计为6车道，现已建成通车。

主要景点

中山陵	明孝陵	夫子庙	中华门
秦淮河	雨花台	紫金山天文台	南京大屠杀纪念馆
南京长江大桥	南京市博物馆	莫愁湖	玄武湖
美龄宫	灵谷寺	明故宫遗址	江南贡院
学宫	乌衣巷	白鹭洲公园	瞻园
总统府	梅园新村	太平天国历史博物馆	桃叶渡
中山植物园			

周边名胜

淳溪古街，汤山温泉，栖霞山，金牛山



上海观光
Sightseeing in Shanghai

Natural Features

1. The Oriental Pearl TV Tower

The Oriental Pearl TV Tower is located in Pudong Park in Lujiazui, Shanghai.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The tower, surrounded by the Yangpu Bridge in the northeast and the Nanpu Bridge in the southwest, creates a picture of "twin dragons playing with pearls" The entire scene is a photographic jewel that excites the imagination and attracts thousands of visitors year-round.



This 468 meters high (1 536 feet) tower is the world's third tallest TV and radio tower surpassed in height only by towers in Toronto, Canada and Moscow, Russia. However, even more alluring than its height is the tower's unique architectural design that makes the Oriental Pearl TV Tower one of the most attractive places anywhere. The base of the tower is supported by three seven-meter wide slanting stanchions. Surrounding the eleven steel spheres that are 'strung" vertically through the center of the tower are three nine-meter wide columns. There are three large spheres including the top sphere, known as the space module. Then there are five smaller spheres and three decorative spheres on the tower base. The entire structure rests on rich green grassland and gives the appearance of pearls shining on a jade plate.

Visitors travel up and down the tower in double-decker elevators that can hold up to fifty people at the rate of seven meters per second. The elevator attendants recite an introduction to the TV Tower in English and Chinese during the rapid 1/4-mile ascent. Once you reach your destination, you will be amazed at the variety of activities available as the various spheres and columns actually house places of interest, commerce, and recreation. The inner tower is a recreational palace, while the Shanghai Municipal History Museum is located in the tower's pedestal. The large lower sphere has a futuristic space city and a fabulous sightseeing hall. From here, on a clear day a visitor can see all the way to the Yangtze River. The base of the tower is home to a science fantasy city. The five smaller spheres are a hotel that contains twenty-five elegant rooms and lounges. The pearl at the very top of the tower contains shops, restaurants, (including a rotating restaurant) and a sightseeing floor. The view of Shanghai from this height fills you with wonder at the beauty that surrounds you. When viewed from the Bund at night, the tower's three-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

dimensional lighting makes it a delight of brilliant color.

It is amazing that this ultra-modern tower combines ancient concepts such as the spherical pearls, with 21st Century technology, commerce, recreation, educational and conference facilities. All of this and it really is a TV and radio tower that services the Shanghai area with more than nine television channels and upwards of ten FM radio channels. Truly, "oriental pearl" is the most suitable name for this tower.

2. Huangpu River and the Bund

Huangpu River, the most important shipping artery of Shanghai, wriggles like an undulating muddy dragon from the mouth of the Yangtze River in Wusong to the East China Sea. The yellow and ice-free Huangpu River is 114 kilometers (71 miles) long, 400 meters wide and has an average depth of nine meters (30 feet).

Huangpu River joins 29 kilometers (18 miles) north of downtown Shanghai and divides Shanghai into two parts, east and west. Cruises are available everyday, including the shorter cruises (navigating the main waterfront area between the Yangpu Bridge and the Nanpu Bridge) and the complete cruises (meandering eastward along the golden waterway, over a distance of 60 kilometers or 37 miles). Whether it is in the daytime or at night, the views along the river are the same beautiful. The great modern skyscrapers and the characteristic buildings in different architectural styles are the best records of the development of the city and the Huangpu River, the birthplace of Shanghai, is the faithful eyewitness.

The Bund, also called the Zhongshan Road, is a famous waterfront and regarded as the symbol of Shanghai for hundreds of years. It starts from the Baidu Bridge, which is at the connecting point of the Huangpu River and the Suzhou Creek, to the East Jinling Road and winds a 1 500 meters (less than one mile) length. Walking along the Bund, which is at the west shore of the Huangpu River, the Oriental Pearl TV Tower can be seen on the opposite side and also the Jin Mao Tower. Being one of the Top Ten Shanghai Attractions, the Bund is a really beautiful and special place which is worth visiting. The newly-built Flood Control Bank takes the function of preventing the oversize flood; the square with the statue of Marshal Chen Yi is an open air podium which gives new views of the Shanghai Plaza Culture; the Cenotaph which stands on the man-made island is a monument of people's heroes; the riverside greenbelt, the Electronic Waterfall Bell, and the Great Mural Carving are all representatives of the Bund.

The most famous and attractive sight which is at the west side of the Bund are

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the 52 various buildings of different architectural styles including Gothic, Baroque, Romanesque, Classicism and the Renaissance. The Bund was the center of Shanghai's politics, economy and culture hundreds of years ago, consulates of most countries and many banks, businesses and newspaper offices were settled there, and that's why we have these art-like buildings. Although they were not designed by the same person or built in the same period, the architectural pattern is similar.

3. Nanjing Road

China's premier shopping street, 3.4-mile-long Nanjing Road, starts at the Bund in the east and ends in the west at the junction of Jingan Temple and Yan'an West Street. Today Nanjing Road is a must-see metropolitan destination attracting thousands of fashion-seeking shoppers from all over the world.

After the Opium War, Shanghai became a treaty port. Nanjing Road was first the British Concession, then the International Settlement. Importing large quantities of foreign goods, it became the earliest shopping street in Shanghai.



Over time, Nanjing Road has been restructured, undergoing significant change. For shopping convenience, its eastern end has an all-weather pedestrian arcade. Big traditional stores no longer dominate the market since modern shopping malls, specialty stores, theatres, and international hotels have mushroomed on both sides of the street.

Today over 600 businesses on Nanjing road offer countless famous brands, superior quality, and new fashions. KFC, McDonald's Pizza Hut, and other world-famous food vendors line both sides of the street. Upscale stores include Tiffany, Mont Blanc, and Dunhill. In addition, approximately a hundred traditional stores and specialty shops still provide choice silk goods, jade, embroidery, wool, and clocks.

Open-air bars, abstract sculptures, and lingering sounds from street musicians enhance evening strolls. A trackless sightseeing train provides a comfortable tour of the night-transformed pedestrian street. Flashing neon signs illuminate the magnificent buildings and spangle the night skyline of this lively city.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

4. Yuyuan Garden

Yuyuan Garden is a famous classical garden located in Anren Jie, Shanghai. The garden was finished in 1577 by a government officer of the Ming Dynasty named Pan Yunduan. Yu in Chinese means pleasing and satisfying, and this garden was specially built for Pan's parents as a place for them to enjoy a tranquil and happy time in their old age.

In the 400 years of its existence, Yuyuan Garden had undergone many changes. During the late Ming Dynasty, it became very dilapidated with the decline of Pan's family. In 1760, some rich merchants bought Yuyuan Garden and spent more than 20 years reconstructing the buildings. During the Opium War of the 19th century, Yuyuan Garden was severely damaged. The Yuyuan Garden you see today is the result of a five year restoration project which began in 1956. The garden was open to the public in September, 1961.

Yuyuan Garden occupies an area of 20 000 square meters (about five acres). However, the small size is not a representative of the attractions of the garden. The pavilions, halls, rockeries, ponds and cloisters all have unique characteristics. There are six main scenic areas in the garden: Sansui Hall, Wanhua Chamber, Dianchun Hall, Huijing Hall, Yuhua Hall and the Inner Garden. Each area features several scenic spots within its borders.

The Inner Garden was a separate garden built in 1709, but is now a part of Yuyuan Garden in the south. The Inner Garden is compact and exquisite, and the rocks, pavilions, ornamental ponds and flower walls offer some of the most attractive sceneries in Yuyuan Garden.

5. Shanghai Museum

Located in the center of Shanghai in People's square, Shanghai Museum is a large museum of ancient Chinese art. The museum style and presentation surround visitors with artifacts demonstrating ancient wisdom and philosophy. The exterior design of the round dome and the square base symbolizes the ancient idea of a round heaven and a square land.

The museum is divided into eleven galleries and three exhibition halls. The eleven Galleries cover most of the major categories of Chinese art: Ancient Bronze, Ancient Ceramics, Paintings, Calligraphy, Ancient Sculpture, Ancient Jade, Coins, Ming and Qing Furniture, Seals, and Minority Nationalities.

The bronze ware of the Shang and Zhou dynasties contribute to our understanding of ancient civilization. The over 400 pieces of exquisite bronze wares cover

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the history of ancient Chinese bronze art.

The ancient ceramics collection is a special Shanghai Museum treasure. Among the more than 500 pieces are artwork from various dynasties, such as painted and gray pottery from the Neolithic age, primitive celadon from the Shang, Zhou and Warring States, mature celadon from the East Han Dynasty, the well known tri-colored glazed pottery from the Tang Dynasty, blue, white and black glazed as well as painted porcelain from the Song, Jin and Liao, and the brilliant works from Jingdezhen, Jiangxi, the center of the industry during the Yuan, Ming, and Qing dynasties.

Chinese paintings and calligraphy have profound traditions and unique national styles. Masterpieces from different periods and genres are featured.

The Gallery of Chinese Ancient Sculpture focuses mainly on Buddhist sculptures.

Jade in ancient China was both decoration and the symbol of wealth and power. It was further personified to symbolize perfect morality. The elegance of jade wares glows through its crystal colors and vivid patterns.

The Ming and Qing dynasties witnessed the heyday of Chinese furniture. The gallery shows a refined garden-like residence of that time. Even a simple chair demonstrates Chinese culture and etiquette.

First of its kind, the Gallery of Chinese Seals, reflects the importance of seals in history from the Western Zhou to the end of the Qing Dynasty.

China is one of the earliest countries to use currency, and the nearly 7 000 pieces in the Gallery of Chinese Coins reveal the development of Chinese currency and the growth of economic exchange between China and foreign countries.

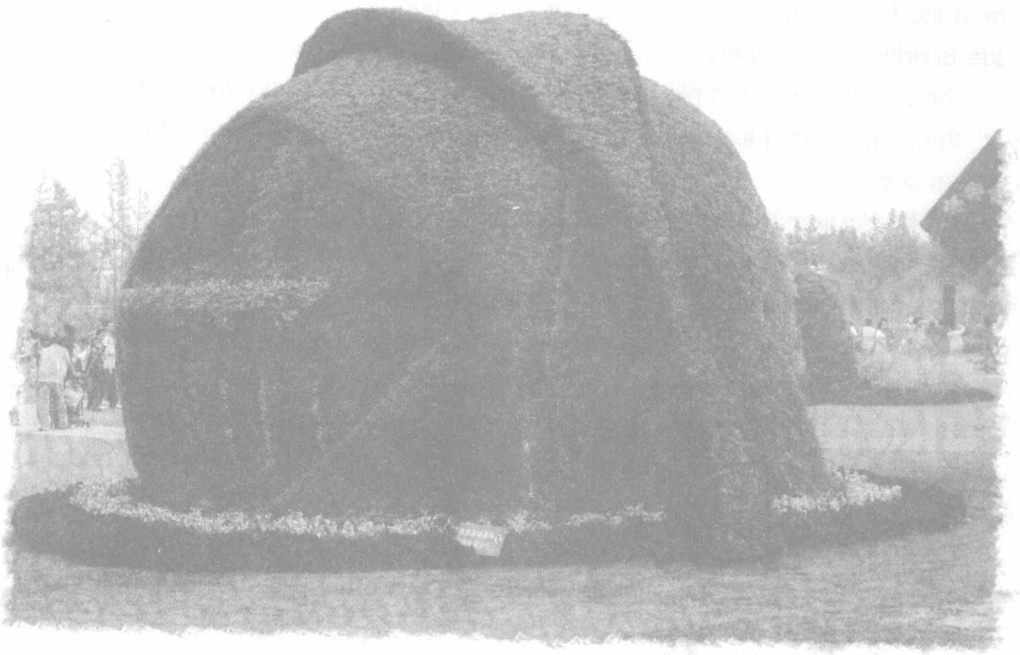
Chinese culture is a result of the melding and collaboration of many nationalities. During its long history, minority nationalities have created their own colorful cultures. From clothes to textiles, metal wares, sculptures, pottery, lacquer and bamboo wares, the exotic styles of their artwork give us a general picture of creativity and passion toward life of those ethnic groups.

6. Jade Buddha Temple

In the western part of Shanghai, a very modern and flourishing city, there is a venerable and famous Buddhist temple, Jade Buddha Temple. In 1882, an old temple was built to keep two jade Buddha statues which had been brought from Burma by a monk named Huigen. The temple was destroyed during the revolution that overthrew the Qing Dynasty. Fortunately the jade Buddha statues were saved

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

and a new temple was built on the present site in 1928. It was named the Jade Buddha Temple.



The two precious jade Buddhist statues are not only rare cultural relics but also porcelain artworks. Both the Sitting Buddha and the Recumbent Buddha are carved with whole white jade. The sparkling and crystal-clear white jade gives the Buddhas the beauty of sanctity and make them more vivid. The Sitting Buddha is 190 centimeters high and encrusted by the agate and the emerald, portraying the Buddha at the moment of his meditation and enlightenment. The Recumbent Buddha is 96 centimeters long, lying on the right side with the right hand supporting the head and the left hand placing on the left leg, this shape is called the "lucky repose" The sedate face shows the peaceful mood of Sakyamuni when he left this world. In the temple there is also another Recumbent Buddha which is four meters long and was brought from Singapore by the tenth abbot of the temple in 1989. Furthermore there are many other ancient paintings and Buddhist scriptures distributed in the different halls of the temple.

Although the history of the Jade Buddha Temple is not very long, the old-time and classical architectural style makes the temple unique and inimitable in this

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

modern city. Devajara Hall, Mahavira Hall and the Jade Buddha Tower make up the main structure of the temple and at sides are the Kwan-yin Dian Hall, the Amitabha Dian Hall, the Zen Tang Hall, the Dining-Room and the Recumbent Buddha Hall. The Sitting Buddha is in the Jade Buddha Tower and the Recumbent Buddhas are in the Recumbent Buddha Hall. More than 7 000 Dazang sutras are kept in the Jade Buddha Tower; these are all the inestimable culture relics.

The Jade Buddha Temple is a good place to go whether you are a Buddhist or not, the peaceful and transcendent atmosphere adds a kind of richness to our busy modern society.

7. The Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen

At No. 7 Xiangshan Road, Shanghai, stands a two-storey European-style building. It may not be that noticeable among the nearby high buildings and mansions but it has won deep reverence and admiration from visitors since it was opened to the public in 1988. It is the Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen (also named Sun Wen), the great forerunner of the Chinese democratic revolution, the founder of the Republic of China and the respected contributor to Chinese modern history.

From 1918 to 1925, Mr. Sun Yat-sen and his wife, Mrs. Soong Chingling lived in the Former Residence, which was donated by some patriotic overseas Canadian Chinese, in support of the Chinese revolution. It was here that Mr. Sun accomplished his renowned masterpieces such as Doctrines of Sun Wen, Plans of China's development, etc., made the plan of reforming the Three Principles of the People (Nationalism, Democracy and the People's Livelihood) and put forward the three cardinal policies (alliance with Soviet Russia, cooperation with the Communists and assistance to the workers" and peasants" movements). It was also here that he received the representatives of the Communist Party of China and promoted the first cooperation between the two major parties in Chinese modern history (the Nationalist Party and the Communist Party).

The residence witnessed his enthusiasm and his contributions to the Chinese revolution during the last years of this great man. After his death in 1925, Mrs. Soong continued to live here until 1937 when the Japanese army occupied Shanghai. Eight years later, upon China winning the war, Mrs. Soong offered to provide her home as the permanent site to Mr. Sun's memory. In 1961, the Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen was listed as being one of the Key State-preserved Cultural Relic Units.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

8. Zhujiajiao: Shanghai's Venice

Located in a suburb of Shanghai city, Zhujiajiao is an ancient water town well-known throughout the country, with a history of more than 1700 years. Covering an area of 47 square kilometers, the little fan-shaped town glimmers like a bright pearl in the landscape of lakes and mountains.

Endowed with another elegant name— "Pearl Stream"— the little town is the best-preserved among the four ancient towns in Shanghai. Unique old bridges across bubbling streams, small rivers shaded by willow trees, and houses with courtyards attached all transport people who have been living amidst the bustle and hustle of the modern big city to a brand-new world full of antiquity, leisure and tranquillity.

Special Mention

The Site of the First National Congress of the Communist Party of China

As a renowned historical attraction of Shanghai, the Site of the First National Congress of the Communist Party of China has received 10 million visitors from home and abroad since its opening 50 years ago, with attendance rising to 1.8 million visitors in recent years after rebuilt in 1999. Situated at No. 76 Xingye Road, next to Shanghai Xintiandi, a fashionable pedestrian area, the two-story Shikumen building was completed in 1920 as the residence of two Communist Party members. On July 23, 1921, thirteen members held their first national congress of the Communist Party of China here, marking the birth of the Party.

In the living room on the first floor where the congress was held, everything is placed as it was 87 years ago. The articles copied from the originals create an imposing atmosphere in this 18-square-meter (194 sq. ft) little room. Upstairs is an exhibition hall of 450 square meters (4 860 sq. ft), with more than one hundred revolutionary relics, documents, and photos on display. The exhibits cover the history of the Party's birth, the blooming of nation-wide communist teams, photos of the thirteen members, etc.. In addition, a waxworks hall inside vividly reproduces the scene of this significant meeting. The other twelve members listen and smile as Mao Zedong, founder of the PRC, makes his speech. Lifelike, the wax figures seem to make time stand still, bringing people back to that exciting moment.

Major Scenic Sites

Oriental Pearl TV Tower
Huangpu River and the Bund
Nanjing Road

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Yuyuan Garden
Shanghai Museum
Jade Buddha Temple
The Former Residence of Sun Yat-sen
The Site of the First National Congress of the Communist Party of China
Jin Mao Tower
Yangpu Bridge
Nanpu Bridge
Shanghai Xintiandi
Longhua Pagoda and Longhua Temple

Other Attractions Around the Place

Shanghai Pudong International Airport
Zhujiajiao
Qibao Ancient Town
Qiuxiapu Garden
Dong Ping National Forest Park
Shou-an Temple
Sheshan National Tourist Resort
Shiji Square
Shiji Park
Former Residence of Luxun
Shanghai Wildlife Garden



上海观光
Sightseeing in Shanghai

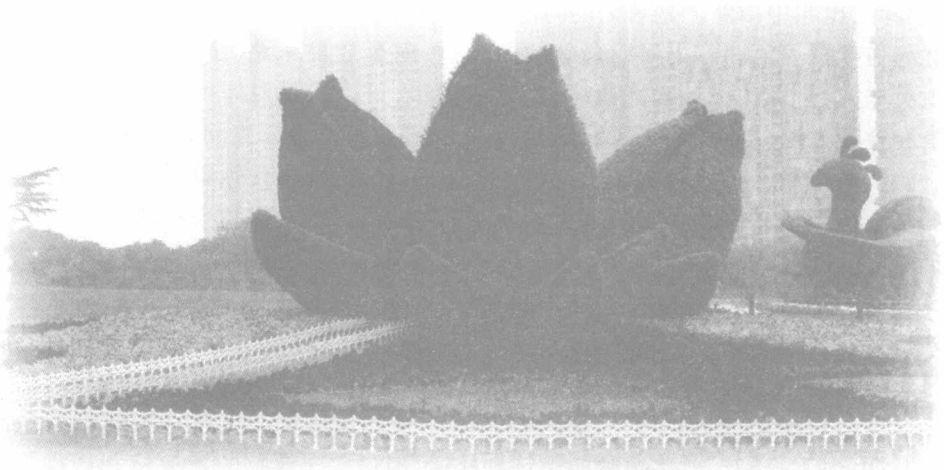
自然概况

1. 东方明珠塔

东方明珠广播电视塔坐落于上海市浦东公园陆家嘴，塔的东北和西南端环抱于杨浦和南浦两座大桥之间，构成了一幅“双龙戏珠”的美景。整个景致如同一块镶嵌在像片中的宝石，勾起人们的无限遐想，一年四季吸引着成成千上万的游客。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

这是一座高达468米(1 536英尺)的广播电视塔,在世界广播电视塔中排列第三,其高度仅次于加拿大的多伦多和俄罗斯的莫斯科的广播电视塔。但是,比其高度更迷人的是其独特的建筑设计风格,这种风格使东方明珠广播电视塔成为吸引四面八方游客的最诱人景点。塔的底座支撑于三只斜柱之上。三根直径为9米的柱子环绕着塔正中从空中串联而下的11颗钢质球体,其中三颗是大型钢球,包括塔顶的那颗。另有五颗小一些的钢球和塔基上的三颗装饰球。整个建筑坐落于如茵的绿色草地之上,如同玉盘上的明珠在闪耀一般。



游客乘坐可载50人,时速高达每秒7米的高速双层电梯在高塔中上下往返。电梯在1/4英里快速上升时,电梯乘务员用英语和汉语介绍着电视塔的情况。到达终点后,游客会为大小不一的球体和圆柱里竟然有许多名胜、商业和娱乐等各种各样的活动而惊讶不已。电视塔的内塔是一座娱乐宫殿,而上海市历史博物馆则建于塔的基架上。下方的巨大球体里是一座未来空间城和一间上佳的观光大厅。晴天时,游客从这里可以一览长江雄姿。东方明珠科幻城位于塔底。5颗较小的钢球中是由25个优雅房间和休息室组成的空中旅馆。塔的最上部的球体内设有商店、饭店(包括一个旋转餐厅)和观光层。从这个高度,上海的美景尽收眼底,使你惊叹不已。夜间从外滩看去,明球塔的三维照明使她无比地光辉夺目。

这座极为现代化的高塔把球体明珠这样的古典概念与21世纪技术、商业、娱乐、教育和会议设施相结合,令人十分惊异。所有这一切的确使明珠塔成为一座拥有9个以上电视频道和10个以上无线电频率,服务于上海地区的广播电视塔。"东方明珠"的确是这座塔最为名符其实的称号。

2. 黄浦江和外滩

黄浦江是上海最重要的航运要道,它像一条汹涌澎湃、波浪起伏的巨龙,从吴淞口的长江口蜿蜒流入东海。黄色无冰的黄浦江全长114公里(71英里),宽400

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

米,平均深度为9米(30英尺)。

黄浦江从上海商业区北部29公里(18英里)处流入,把上海分成东、西两个部分。黄浦江游览活动每天都可以进行,包括短程游览(杨浦火桥和南浦天桥之间的主港区航行)和全程游览(沿这条金色水道向东漫游60公里或37英里以上)。不论是白天还是在夜间,所见到的沿江风景都同样美丽。现代化的摩天大楼和不同建筑风格的典型建筑是上海发展的最好见证,黄浦江——上海的诞生地则是忠实的见证者。

外滩,也叫中山路。是著名的海港区,几百年来一直被视作为上海的象征。外滩北起位于黄浦江和苏州河汇合处的白渡桥,南至金陵东路,全长约1 500米(不到1英里)。外滩位于黄浦江西岸,沿外滩漫步,可以看见对岸的东方明珠广播电视塔和金茂大厦。外滩是中国十佳景点之一,确为一个十分美丽和特殊的地方,值得一游。新建造的防洪墙发挥了预防特大洪水的功能;立有陈毅元帅雕像的陈毅广场是上海广场文化新观点的露天讲坛:耸立在人造岛上的和平纪念碑是一座人民英雄纪念碑:江边绿化带、电子瀑布钟和壁雕都是外滩的标志。

外滩西部最为著名和最具吸引力的景点是52座建筑风格迥异的建筑物,其中包括哥特式、巴洛克式、罗马式、古典主义式和文艺复兴式的建筑。数百年前,外滩曾是上海的政治、经济和文化中心。当时,大多数国家的领事馆和许多银行、商务和报社曾落户于此,因此才有今天这些艺术品般的建筑群。虽然这些建筑不是同一个时期,也不是同一个建筑师所设计和建造,但这些建筑物的建筑格调却是相近的。

3. 南京路(步行街)

南京路素有中华商业第一街之称,它全长3.4英里,东起外滩,西至静安寺与延安西路交汇。如今,南京路已经成为世界各地成千上万时尚购物者必去的都市购物场所。

鸦片战争(1839~1842)之后,上海被迫成为通商口岸。南京路先是英国租界,后来又成为帝国主义公共租界。由于大量进口外国商品,这儿成为上海最早的一条商业街。

随着时间的漂逝,南京路已得以重建,发生了显著的变化。为了方便购物,南京路东端建造了一条全天候步行街。现代购物中心、特色商店、影剧院和国际饭店如雨后春笋,沿街林立,大型百年老店已经不再占有市场统治地位。

今天,南京路上600多家商号为人们供应无数名、特、优新产品。街道两旁尽是肯德基、麦当劳、比萨饼小屋和其他世界闻名食品的商贩。高消费阶层商店有蒂芙尼、万宝龙以及登喜路。此外,大约100家老字号商店和特色商店依然供应着精选丝绸商品、玉、刺绣、羊毛和时钟等商品。

户外酒吧、抽象雕塑和街道音乐人经久不衰的歌声增添了晚间漫步的乐趣。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

无轨观光车使夜晚的步行街之行十分舒适惬意，闪烁的霓虹灯照亮了街道两旁宏伟的建筑，照亮着这个充满生机和活力的城市的夜空。

4. 豫园

豫园位于上海市安仁街，是一座古典园林。豫园由明代四川布政使潘允端于1577年所建。在古汉语里，“愉”与“豫”通用，意为“愉快”和“满意”。潘允端建造此园是为了“愉悦双亲，颐养天年”之意，供其父母亲安享晚年所用。

建园400年来，豫园经历了许多变化。明朝末期，由于潘家已经衰落，豫园也随之呈现出荒废景象。1760年，一些富商买下了豫园，并用了20多年时间重建了园中建筑。19世纪鸦片战争时期，豫园惨遭破坏。今天人们所看到的豫园是在1956年开始的一项5年恢复工程的结果。豫园于1961年9月向公众开放。

豫园占地20 000平方米（大约5英亩）。然而，面积小巧并不是豫园吸引游客的地方。这里的亭阁、厅堂、假山、池塘和回廊全都具有独特的风格。豫园内有6个主要风景区：三穗堂景区；万花楼、鱼乐榭景区；点春堂景区；会景楼景区；玉华堂景区和内园景区。每个景区都有若干个特色景点供游人参观。

豫园的内园于1709年建成，曾是一个独立的园林建筑。但如今这儿已成为豫园南部的组成部分。内园的建筑紧凑精致，岩石、亭阁、观赏池和花墙是豫园一些最具吸引力的景点。

5. 上海博物馆

上海博物馆位于上海市的中心——人民广场的南侧，是一座古代中国艺术的大型博物馆。博物馆的建筑风格及其展品使游客沐浴在展示古代智慧和哲学的史前古器物之中。博物馆圆屋顶的外部设计以及方体基座象征着“天圆地方”的古典思想。

上海博物馆设有11个艺术馆和3个展览厅。11个艺术馆里陈列了大多数主要门类的中国艺术品：古代青铜、古代陶瓷、绘画、书法、古代雕塑、古代玉器、钱币、明清家具、玺印以及少数民族工艺等。

商朝和周朝的青铜器可使游客了解古老的中国文明。400多件精致青铜器涵盖了古代中国青铜艺术的历史。

古代陶器收藏是上海博物馆的一笔财富。500多件陶器中，有各个朝代的艺术品，如新石器时代的彩色和灰色陶器，商、周和战国时期的原始青瓷、东汉的熟青瓷，著名的唐三彩釉陶、宋、金和辽代的蓝、白、黑釉陶和彩陶，以及江西景德镇光彩夺目的陶瓷工艺品。

中国国画和书法有着悠久的传统和独特的民族形式。不同时期和类型引人注目的艺术品都在这儿展出。

中国古代雕刻品陈列馆主要集中于佛教雕刻品。

古代中国的玉器既是装饰品又是财富和权力的代表，象征着完美的伦理道德。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

水晶般的色泽和生动的图案透着玉器的玲珑优雅。

明朝和清朝见证了中国家俱的全盛时期。艺术馆里展示了当时精致的花园式住宅的情况。甚至一把简单的椅子也都在证明,中国是一个文化礼仪之邦。

中国历代玺印馆是目前国内外第一个专题陈列玺印篆刻的艺术馆。玺印馆反映了从西周到清末时期玺印在历史上的重要性。

中国是使用货币最早的国家之一。中国货币馆里近7 000枚中国硬币展示了中国货币和中国与世界各国经济交往的兴起和发展过程。

中国文化是一个多民族融合和合作的结果。在悠久的历史长河中,少数民族创造了自己的丰富多彩的文化。从服装到纺织品、金属器皿、雕刻品、陶瓷、漆器和竹子器皿、风格奇特的艺术品,所有这些,都展示了一幅创造力和民族生活激情的画卷。

6. 玉佛寺

在上海这座现代化繁华城市的西部地区,有一座古老的著名佛寺,那就是玉佛寺。1882年,这里建造了一座古寺,以便存放一位名叫慧根的法师从缅甸带来的两尊玉佛雕像。在推翻清王朝的革命运动中,这座寺庙被摧毁。幸运的是,两尊玉佛像完好无损。1928年,在目前的地点上又建造了一座新的寺庙,取名玉佛寺。

这两尊珍贵的玉佛雕像不仅是稀有的文化遗物,而且还是瓷器艺术品。两尊佛像一坐一卧,都是用一整块汉白玉雕刻而成的。闪耀着光芒和晶莹洁白的碧玉使佛像柔美中显得庄严,愈加栩栩如生。坐佛雕像高1.90米,上面饰有翡翠、玛瑙等宝石,呈沉思和开悟之状。卧佛身长0.96米,右手支头侧卧在右边,左手置于左腿之上。这是释迦牟尼涅磐的一刹那的形象。佛像安详的面容表现了释迦牟尼圆寂时的平和神态。佛寺里还有一尊卧佛。这尊卧佛长4米,是佛寺第十任执事于1989年从新加坡运来的。此外,寺庙的其他殿堂里还藏有许多其他古代绘画和佛教经文。

虽然玉佛寺的历史不太长,但在这座现代化的城市里,古代和古典建筑风格使这座寺庙显得独特和无与伦比。天王殿、大雄宝殿和玉佛楼组成寺庙的主体结构,左右两侧有观音殿、铜佛殿、禅唐殿、斋堂和卧佛堂。坐佛雕像安放在玉佛楼里,卧佛雕像安放在卧佛堂里。100多卷大藏经藏在玉佛楼里:这些经文全是极为珍贵的文化遗产。

不论游客是不是佛教徒,玉佛寺都是一个观光的好去处,这里平和超然的气氛为繁忙的现代社会增添了一种华美之感。

7. 中山故居

上海香山路7号座落着一处欧式两层楼房。在附近宏伟的高楼大厦群中,这座楼房可能不那么起眼,但自从1988年对公众开放以来,它却赢得了人们深深的敬意和赞赏。这就是中国民主革命的伟大先驱,中华民国创始人和中国现代史的

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

创造者孙中山(又名孙文)的故居。

中山故居是由一些旅居加拿大的华侨为支援中国革命而捐赠的。从1918年到1925年,孙中山先生和夫人宋庆龄一直在这儿生活。孙中山就是在这儿完成《孙文学说》、《实业计划》等重要著作的。他还在这里制定了"民族、民权、民生"的三民主义改革计划,并确立了联俄、联共、扶助农工三大政策。同样也是在这儿,孙中山先生接见了中国共产党的代表,并促成了中国现代史上两个最大的政党(国民党和共产党)的第一次合作。

中山故居见证了孙中山先生这位伟人在最后几年里的革命热情和他对中国革命的贡献。1925年孙中山去世后,宋庆龄继续在这儿居住,一直到1937年日本军队侵占上海。8年后,中国取得了抗日战争的胜利,宋庆龄将其献出,作为孙中山先生的永久纪念地。1961年,中山故居被列为国家重点文化遗产保护单位。

8. 朱家角——上海的威尼斯

朱家角位于上海市郊,是一个有着1 700多年历史的著名水乡古镇。朱家角面积为47平方公里,这个折扇形的小镇如同一颗璀璨明珠镶嵌在湖光山色之中。

朱家角还有另一个优雅美名:"珠溪"。这座小镇是上海四座古镇中保存最完好的江南水乡古镇。独特的古桥跨过潺潺的溪流,垂柳怀抱着小河,带有庭院的农家房屋吸引着所有生活在现代都市喧嚣声中的游人到这里体验一种全新的古雅、悠闲和宁静的生活。

特别提醒

中国共产党第一次全国代表大会会址

作为上海的一个著名历史景点,中国共产党第一次全国代表大会会址开放五十年便接待了国内外1千多万游客。1999年重建后,近年来的参观游客已上升至1千8百万。一大会址位于兴业路76号,紧挨着新潮的步行区"上海新天地"。这是一幢建于1920年的石库门楼房,是当时出席大会的上海代表李汉俊和他哥哥的寓所。1921年7月23日,13名代表在这里举行了中国共产党第一次全国代表大会,标志着中国共产党的诞生。

在举行会议的一楼起居室里,一切物品都依照84年前的位置摆放。仿照原物制作的物品在这个18平方米的小房间里营造出了令人难忘的气氛。楼上是一个450平方米的展厅,里面陈列着100多件革命文物、文献和历史照片。展品覆盖了中国共产党诞生、全国共产主义小组的发起等历史,以及13位代表的照片等等。此外,里面的蜡像展厅还栩栩如生地再现了这次重要会议的场景。中华人民共和国的创始人毛泽东发言时,其他12位会议成员脸含笑容在倾听。逼真的蜡像似乎使时间定格,把人们带回那个令人激动的时刻。

主要景点

东方明珠塔　　黄浦江——外滩

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

南京路步行街
上海博物馆
中山故居
金茂大厦
南浦大桥
龙华塔和龙华寺

豫园
玉佛寺
“中共一大”会址
杨浦大桥
上海新天地

周边名胜

上海浦东国际机场
七宝古镇
东平国家森林公园
佘山国家旅游度假区
世纪公园
上海野生动物园

朱家角
秋霞圃
寿安寺
世纪广场
鲁迅故居



皖南古村落——西递村与宏村
Xidi and Hongcun——Ancient Villages in Southern Anhui

Natural Features

Xidi village is 8km east of the town seat of Yi County, Huangshan City, Anhui Province. According to “Noble clans in Xin'an”, the place was surrounded by “Mt Luo in front, Mt Yangjian at the back, Mt Shishi in the north, and Mt Tianma in the south, flanked by two rivers flowing to the west instead of the east, hence named as Xidi”, which means “passing to the west” in Chinese.

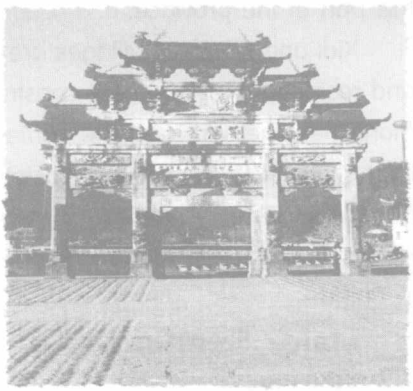
The village embraced in the mountains is really scenic and abundant of resources. Inhabitants here are accustomed to a life of leisure and self-reliance with little disturbance from outside, therefore keep much of their ancient customs and enjoy the fame as “lucky folks of an Utopian land”.

The present Xidi village occupies an area of 12.96 hectares surrounded by mountains, with three rivers or streams running throung from the east and north to join into one in the south of the village. One main street and the two waterside

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

roads provide the main structure of its streets and lanes roughly from west to east, expanding to the north and south at the same time, all paved with local stone slabs. The lanes, the streams, and the houses are pleasantly integrated with a rhythmic variation of space. The ancient buildings are mainly of brick and log, decorated with a variety of wood, stone and brick carvings impressively plain and elegant, characteristic of the talent and achievement of the ancient villages in the creating of human residence in southern Anhui.

Hongcun village lies at the southwest foot of Yellow Mountain (Huangshan), 11km southwest of Yi County, a gateway for merchants to go to the capital city in ancient times.



The village covers 28 hectares, of which 19.11 are recognized as the ancient village, where there are 158 folk houses of Ming and Qing Dynasties and 137 of them are preserved intact. With its main street as the axis, the village is near the joint of Yangzhan River and Sui Stream in the west, East Stream and East Mountain in the east, Leigang Mountain at its back, Moon Pond in the north, South Lake and Qishu Lake in the south.

The layout of the village resembles the outline of an ox, hence it is popularly addressed as "Ox-shaped Village". The high Leigang Mountain is the perking head, the tall green trees are the horns, the village proper with its crowded houses is the body, the clean ponds are the stomach, the meandering ditches among the houses are the intestines, and the four outthrust bridges are the legs. The village, then, lies peacefully like an ox at ease among the blessing green mountains guarding the fertile farmlands.

Special Mention

Precisely speaking, ancient villages in southern Anhui refer to the architectural complexes with a historical, artistic, and scientific value, specifically the folk houses, shrines, schools, archways, towers, pavilions, and water outlet, etc., mainly found in the six counties of ancient Hui prefecture, namely the present Xi, Yi, Xiuning, Qimen, Jixi, and Wuyuan counties. Villages here are well preserved as they were built in Ming and Qing Dynasties, together with the folks' customs and life styles. Among the counties, Yi County has the largest number of

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the ancient villages survived most intact.

According to a survey in 1982 by the local government, Yi County still has 715 natural villages, with over 30 ancient houses of Ming Dynasty, 3 590 or more of Qing Dynasty, as well as 3 clan shrines of Ming Dynasty and 118 of Qing Dynasty. The most representative of the villages are Xidi and Hongcun villages, which remian fairly untouched in their format and style of Ming and Qing Dynasties.

The human civilization of the two villages is amazingly harmonious with the landscape. The planning of the village as a whole is clever, the courtyard design is complete and rational, the decoration and furnishing are typical of southern Anhui,—all these make the two outstanding of the many ancient villages preserved in this part of the province.

Xidi and Hongcun villages are honored as representing the top level of housing and residential environment construction since Tang and Song Dynasties in China. Moreover, they are also the carriers of the culture of ancient Hui prefecture in the later stage of China's feudal society, and the product of the culture at its prime in Ming and Qing Dynasties. In November of 2000, UNESCO registered Xidi and Hongcun villages in World Heritage List as the only representatives of such villages in China.

Major Scenic Sites

Xidi Village

1. Archway of Hu Wen-guang



Archway of Hu wen-guang, popularly referred to as Archway of Xidi village, has a history of over 400 years since its erecting in 1578 in Ming Dynasty. Hu Wen-guang was a native of the village, who passed the civil service examination and was assigned as the magistrate of Wanzai County, Jiangxi Province, then Regional Director of Jiao Prefecture, an official of King Jing, and awarded with the rank of a Grade IV official. Because of his excellent administrative achievement, the emperor approved the erection of his archway of honor as a reward.

2. Jing' ai Hall

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

This hall of respect of love for ancestor seats on the east bank of front stream, the largest shrine remaining in Xidi village. It was originally the residence of Hu Shiheng, the 14th generation ancestor of the clan. First constructed in Ming Dynasty, later damaged in a fire, the hall was restored in Qing Dynasty as the clan shrine. It is a wood and brick structured building typical of Anhui architecture, covering 1 800 m^2, as the center where the whole village expanded out.

3. Zhuimu Hall

This memorial hall is located at the upper of Street Dalu, first constructed in 1794 to commemorate the ancestors of Hu clan as a reminder of the historical origin of Li family and Hu family.

4. Kuanggu House

Entering the village and going on along the slab road to Street Dalu, visitors would see an old and grand mansion: Kuanggu House, or Ancient House. It was originally a courtyard house of family residence constructed in Qing Dynasty, with its Three Carvings of brick, wood, and stone well preserved.

5. Ruiyu Courtyard

Or Courtyard of Lucky Jade, this is a typical house of Hui merchants, built in Qing Dynasty at the entrance of Cross Street.

6. Garden of Peach and Plum

The garden seats at the middle of Cross Street, built in Qing Dynasty. It was the family mansion of Hu Yuan-xi, a merchant of Hui from Xidi. The mansion consists of the main building and its courtyard, in a format of 3-room wide, 3-courted, and 2-storyed. The second story of the second court has an opening for sunlight and ventilation of the whole house.

7. West Garden and East Garden

West Garden is situated at the middle of Cross Street, the former family house of Hu Wen-zhao, a Grade IV official in Qing Dynasty. The mansion consists of three courts, separated by low walls.

Parallel to West Garden is East Garden, built about 260 years ago in Qing Dynasty. It is an ancient mansion of multiple units, plain in style. The gate is not big, but particularly delicate, with the words "East Garden" inscribed above.

8. Yingfu Hall

This was the private residence of Hu Shang-zeng, a Grade II official of Qing Dynasty, the highest in rank among those from Xidi village. The mansion was built in Emperor Kangxi's reign, 3-court and 3-story in structure.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. Dunren Hall

This house seats by the front stream, built in Qing Dynasty as the residence for his retired years by Hu Guan-san, number one merchant of Hui in the village and one of "the six rich men in southern China".

10. Shangde Hall

Meaning "Virtue Hall" in Chinese, it is located at the upper of front stream, built 400 years ago in Ming Dynadty, the oldest of its kind in Xidi village.

11. Stream Villa

In Xidi village, the street along Rear Stream is particularly scenic with households, bridges and brooks. Among the houses here is this distinguished folk's villa, constructed in Qing Dynasty as part of the former Maoxiu (Diligent Cultivation) hall, specially set up for leisure and study.

Hongcun village

1. South Lake School

South Lake is beautiful with its picturesque landscape. In later Ming Dynasty the villagers set up six private schools by the north of the lake, called "Six Schools by the Lake", for the education of the clan's youngsters. In 1814, the six schools merged into one and named as "Intellectual Family School", also referred to as South Lake School. As a representative complex of ancient schools in Hui prefecture, South Lake School is now under the special provincial protection.

2. Lexu Hall

Also called Hall of All Families, it is the primary shrine of the Wang clan, located at the north of Moon Pond in the village and constructed together with the pond in Ming Dynasty.

3. South Lake

This lake of Hongcun village is praised as "the minor West Lake by the foot of Yellow Mountain". It is so named because its position is right in the south of the village. First dug in 1607, the man-made lake holds about 2 hectares of water expanse, in a shape of a big bow.

4. Moon Pond

From South Lake along the ditch northward to the certer of the village, visitors come to a crescent pool, called Moon Fen or Moon Pond, which is the "stomach" of Hongcun village, and the site of "Early Spring at Moon Pond", one of the eight scenes of the village.

5. Water Conduit

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

This watercourse of the village is the "ox intestine", leading in water from Shijie, the "ox tongue" west of the village, where water falls on the rock like pearls, then runs forward in the shade of trees along side West Stream. Here is another one of the village's eight scenes: Water Ripples at Shijie.

6. Chengzhi Hall

Chengzhi (Ambition Succeeding) Hall seats at the middle of the water conduit. It was the family house of Wang Ding-gui, a prominent salt dealer in later Qing Dynasty. The house was built in 1855, now under provincial protection as a key historical site.

7. Lexian Hall

Lexian (Sage Pleasing) Hall was built on the main street of the village in 1699, occupying 411m^2 with 358m^2 floor space. This is one of the "three primary halls" (the other two are Sanli Hall and Baoyi Hall), now under the provincial protection as historical sites.

8. Deyi Hall

Deyi (Virtue and Righteousness) Hall is a typical waterside residence, first constructed in 1815, covering only 220m^2 with 144m^2 floor space. Within a relatively small area, the house is arranged and decorated like a garden, with potted landscapes and flowers and trees as well.

9. Green Garden

It is also a waterside mansion which lies near the source of the village's water conduit. First built towards the end of Ming Dynasty, it was later damaged, then restored in 1825, covering 278m^2 with 256m^2 total floor space. Facing south by a pond of running water, the mansion has a courtyard, a garden, a pond, a tower pavilion, and a wood carving tower.

Other Attractions Around the Place

1. Zouma Tower

Meaning literally "horses passable below" and also called Lofty Tower, it stands west of Archway of Hu Wen-guang at the village entrance, quickly set up by Hu Guan-san, the richest and the number one merchant of the village, to welcome and honor Premier Cao Zheng-yong, father-in-law of Hu's son.

2. Embroidery Tower

This is the tower beside the Official's Mansion (Daifu Di) at the cross of Street Dalu and Cross Street. The mansion owner wasted no waste of this little lot beside the mansion for this tower by the street. The folktale is that his daughter once

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

chose her husband by throwing down an embroidery ball to the lucky young man, therefore the tower is so called.

3. Nanping Village

It is 4km west of Yixian County and it has a history as long as over 1 100 years. There are now in the village 8 temples, 36 wells, 72 lanes and more than 300 houses built in Ming and Qing Dynasties.

4. Guanlu Village

It is about 2km west of Nanping Village. Most of the houses here used to belong to the eight brothers of the Rich Guan's.

5. Tachuan Village

It is only 2km away from Hongcun Village and it is built on the mountain. The group of ancient houses on the mountain slope look like a huge tower in the distance, so is the name "Tower" (Ta in Chinese); and a clear stream running right through the village and bring a lot of happiness to the people here, thus the word "Stream" (Chuan in Chinese) was remembered. That is the origin of the name of the village: Tachuan.



皖南古村落——西递村与宏村

Xidi and Hongcun——Ancient Villages in Southern Anhui

自然概况

西递村位于安徽省黄山市黟县城东 8 公里处，根据《新安民族志》记："其地罗峰高其前，阳尖障其后，石狮盘其北，天马霭其南。中有二水环绕，不之东而之西，故名西递。"即取水势东往西流之意。

西递村群山环绕，景色优美，物产丰富。这里的人们习惯于过自给自足、怡然自乐的生活，受外来影响较少，因而使得不少古风旧俗都仍然保留至今，被誉为"桃花源里人家"。

如今的西递，整个村落面积为 12.96 公顷，四面环山，有三条溪流从村北、村东流经全村。村落以一条纵向街道和两条沿溪道路为主要骨架，构成以东向为主，向南北延伸的村落街巷系统。所有街巷都是采用本地产的青石铺地。巷道、溪流、建

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

筑布局相宜，村落空间变化富有韵律感。古建筑多为砖木结构，用丰富多彩的木雕、石雕、砖雕作装饰，色调朴素淡雅，大方怡人，体现了皖南古村落在人居环境营造方面的杰出才能。

宏村位于安徽省黄山的西南麓，黟县城西南 11 公里处，原是古代黟县赴京通商的必经之路。

宏村占地约 28 公顷，其中被界定为古村落范围的面积有 19.11 公顷。村落里现存有明清时期修建的民居 158 幢，其中的 137 幢保存完整。整个宏村以正街为轴线，西临羊栈河、濉溪交汇处，东傍东溪和东山，背靠雷岗山，北围月塘，南倚南湖和奇墅湖。

宏村整个村落布局犹如牛形，故又被人们称为“牛形村”。全村以高昂挺拔的雷岗山为“牛头”；满山青翠苍郁的古树是牛的“头角”；村内鳞次栉比的建筑群是“牛身”；碧波荡漾的塘湖为“牛胃”和“牛肚”；穿堂绕屋、九曲十弯的人工水圳是“牛肠”；村边的四座木桥为“牛腿”：宏村就似一头卧牛处于青山环绕、稻田连绵的山冈之中。

特别提醒

皖南古村落，指的是安徽省境内长江以南地区在清朝末年以前形成的，具有历史、艺术、科学价值的民居、祠堂、书院、牌坊、楼台亭阁及水口等建筑群。其中心地带在原徽州府的一府六县（即歙县、黟县、休宁、祁门、绩溪、婺源）。这些古村落至今仍较完整地保留了明清时期的原貌格局，村落里居民的传统生活习俗也大多沿袭至今。其中，黟县是保留古村落最多的县。

根据 1982 年当地政府调查结果，黟县至今仍有 715 个自然村落，保存有明代古民居 30 余幢，清代民居 3 590 余幢，明代祠堂 3 座，清代祠堂 118 座。其中的西递村和宏村，至今保持了完整的明清时期的村落原型格局。

西递村和宏村的人文景观及自然景观极为和谐统一。村落整体布局巧妙，民居庭院完整合理，其建筑装饰和室内设置都有典型的徽州地方特色，是皖南众多古村落中的杰出代表。

西递和宏村被人们誉为代表中国唐宋以来住宅和人居环境建设的最高水平，是明清时期达到鼎盛的徽州文化的产物。2000 年 11 月，西递和宏村作为我国唯一的古村落类型，被联合国教科文组织列入《世界遗产名录》。

主要景点

西递村

1. 胡文光牌坊

西递村头原有 13 座牌楼、牌坊，它们是为村中的忠、孝、节、义之楷模而立的旌表性建筑。排在第一的是孝子牌楼，位于最后的是胡文光牌坊，另外 11 座为节孝牌坊，现仅剩下胡文光牌坊。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

胡文光牌坊俗称西递牌楼，建于明万历六年（1578），距今已有400多年的历史。当时的西递人胡文光（1521～1593）中了嘉靖乙卯科进士，先被朝廷任命为江西万载县知县，后任胶州刺史、荆王府长史，授四品朝列大夫，因其政绩显著，被皇帝恩准敕建这座牌坊。

2. 敬爱堂

敬爱堂位于前边溪东岸，是西递村现存最大的祠堂。敬爱堂原为西递胡氏十四世祖仕亨公住宅，始建于明万历年间，后被毁于火灾，到清乾隆年间才重建为宗祠。敬爱堂是一座面积达1 800平方米的典型徽派砖木结构建筑，整个村庄就是以它为中心展开布局的。

3. 追慕堂

追慕堂位于大路街上方，建于清乾隆甲寅年（1794），用以追思慕念胡氏先祖，使后人勿忘当年的李胡皇族渊源。

4. 旷古斋

从西递村头沿青石板路走进村中大路街，可看到一座高大的老房子，这便是旷古斋。旷古斋是一座庭院式的私家宅院，建于清康熙年间，如今斋内的砖、木、石三雕都基本保持原样。

5. 瑞玉庭

瑞玉庭位于横路街，建于清咸丰年间，是一座有代表性的徽商住宅。

6. 桃李园

桃李园位于横路街中部，建于清咸丰年间，由正屋和庭院组成，是西递徽商胡元熙的旧宅。正屋为三间三进二楼结构，二进楼上设有“楼井”，可使整座房屋空气流通，光线充足。

7. 西园、东园

西园在中横路街上，是清道光年间四品官胡文照的私宅。庭院分前、中、后三进，以低墙相隔。东园与西园相对应，建于清雍正年间，距今有260年历史，是一组多单元的古老住宅，风格古朴。东园门不大，但却极为精致，门额上刻行书“东园”二字。

8. 膺福堂

膺福堂是西递官职最高的清二品官胡尚熵的私邸，建于清康熙年间，为三进三楼结构。

9. 惇仁堂

惇仁堂位于前边溪畔，建于清康熙年间，为村中徽商泰斗、有“江南六富”之一美誉的胡贯三晚年的居所。

10. 尚德堂

尚德堂位于前边溪上游，始建于明万历年间，距今约有四百年的历史，是目前

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

西递村最古老的明代民居建筑。

11. 临溪别墅

西递古村落的后边溪街处处有小桥流水人家景色，其中建于此地的临溪别墅是一座极为别致的民宅。它始建于清道光年间，为当年“懋修堂”建筑的重要部分，是一座适合于休闲读书的宅院。

宏村

1. 南湖书院

宏村的南湖景色秀丽，风暴如画。明末宏村人在南湖北畔建私塾六所，称“倚湖六院”，专供族中子弟受业解惑。清嘉庆十九年(1814)，六院合并重建，取名为以文家塾，又名南湖书院。



2. 乐叙堂

乐叙堂又名众家厅，是宏村的汪氏总祠，位于村中月塘北畔，与月塘同建于明永乐年间。

3. 南湖

宏村的南湖有“黄山脚下小西湖”之美誉，因位于宏村正南方而得名，始建于明万历年间(1607)，是占地面积为2公顷的人工湖。

4. 月沼

从南湖沿水圳北上，到村中央便可见一占地数千平方米的半月形池塘，名月沼或月塘，这就是宏村的“牛胃”。“月沼春晓”为宏村八景之一。

5. 水圳

宏村里被称为“牛肠”的水圳起源于村西的“牛舌”——石碣头。石碣上水珠溅玉，西溪两岸绿树成荫，这里是宏村八景之一的“石碣萦波”。

6. 承志堂

承志堂坐落于水圳中段，始建于清咸丰五年(1855)，是清末大盐商汪定贵的住宅。现为省级重点文物保护单位。

7. 乐贤堂

乐贤堂地处宏村正街，始建于清康熙三十八年(1699)，占地411平方米，建筑面积358平方米，是清初汪氏后裔所建的“三大堂屋”之一(另两座为三立堂和宝贻堂)，属省级文物保护单位。

8. 德义堂

德义堂是一座典型的皖南水榭式民居，始建于清嘉庆二十年(1815)，占地仅220平方米，建筑面积144平方米。在不大的空间里，施以园林式建筑布局，小至盆景，大至果木，一一铺设。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. 碧园

碧园水榭宅在宏村水圳头附近，始建于明末，后被毁，重建于清道光十五年(1825)，占地278平方米，建筑面积256平方米，由庭院、花园、水塘、楼亭和木雕楼组成，建筑手法朴实洗练，环境幽静淡雅。

周边名胜

1. 走马楼

位于村头胡文光牌坊西侧的走马楼又称“凌云阁”，始建于清道光年间，是当年西递首富胡贯三为迎接其亲家，当朝宰相曹振镛的到来而突击营造的。

2. 绣楼

位于大路街与横路街交汇处的大夫第边，是大夫第主人利用正屋旁隙地建起的一座临街阁楼。传说胡家小姐曾在此楼上抛绣球择婿，因而又被称为“小姐绣楼”。

3. 南屏村

位于黟县城西4公里处，有1100多年历史。村中有36眼井、72条巷和300多幢明清古民居，现存祠堂8个，且有族祠、家祠和支祠之分，被誉为“中国古祠堂建筑博物馆”。

4. 关麓村

在南屏村以西约2公里处。关麓村古时有关麓八大家，实际上是同姓的八兄弟，是大户人家，村里大部分房子都是这八兄弟的家宅。

5. 塔川村

塔川村距离宏村仅2公里。该村依山而建，飞檐翘角的古民居，层层叠叠，错落有致，远远望去，就好像一座宝塔矗立在山谷之中，此为“塔”之来历。一条清澈的小溪穿村潺潺流过，给小村带来生机灵气，此为“川”之来历。塔川村因此而得名。



千年古镇同里
Tongli——Millennium Eldest Town

Natural Features

Tongli, which belongs to Wujiang in Jiangsu Province, is located along the bank of Taihu Lake and to the east of ancient canal with eight lakes

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

surrounded; it is 80 kilometers away from Shanghai Hongqiao Airport in the east and 18 kilometers away from Suzhou in the north, adjacent to 318 national highway in the south and Suzhou-Jiaxing expressway in the west. The administrative district of Tongli town, after mergence of Tongli and Tuncun in October, 2001, covers a total area of 102.91 square kilometers and boasts a total population of 58 000 with 12 administrative villages, 1 aquatic product base and 6 community residents' committees affiliated.

Tongli, formerly known as Futu, changed its name as "Tongli (铜里)" in early Tang dynasty due to its luxuriousness, and the current name "Tongli (同里)" can be traced back to the Song dynasty when people re-created the two characters of "fu (富)" and "tu (土)".



Tongli, the ancient town with beautiful scenery, is surrounded by five lakes, namely Tongli, Jiuli, Yeze, Nanxing and Pangshan. The town is divided into 7 small islands by 15 rivers arranged like the Chinese character "川" connected by 49 ancient bridges, making these islands an integrated area. The architectures built by riverside, famous for "small bridge, flowing stream and thatched households", make Tongli ancient town the best-reserved ancient town by riverside as well as the key cultural relics protection unit of province level, which has been listed as one of 13 scenic spots of Tai Lake.

The ancient town is open to the public in 1986, and is listed as the first group of historical and cultural towns in Jiangsu Province by the provincial government in 1995.

Pretty and unsophisticated Tongli town boasts fertile paddy fields, rich resources and outstanding natives, thus crowned as "Small Oriental Venice". Tongli is characterized by a large number of architectures in Ming & Qing dynasties, small bridges and outstanding celebrities. Tongli boasts 38 residences in Ming & Qing dynasties, 47 temples and ancestral halls and around 100 residences of local rich and powerful people as well as former residences of celebrities. In the past, Tongli ancient town featured over 220 natural scenic spots including "Eight Sceneries Ahead", "Eight Sceneries Back", "Successive Four Sceneries", etc., while such sceneries as "Eyeing on the Moon by East Creek", "Mist in Southern Area",

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

"Overlooking on Top of Northern Hill", "Flute form Fishing Households", "Flourishing Vegetation of the Hill", etc.

Tongli people are diligent, hard-working and well-educated, and many outstanding celebrities come from Tongli town. From 1247 AD in Southern Song dynasty to late Qing dynasty, Tongli cultivated 1 Zhuangyuan (champion in imperial examinations), 42 Jinshi (imperial scholars) and 93 Juren (first-degree scholars) in civil and military field.

Famous Tongli people were Zhu Heling, Yuan Long, etc, while famous ones in modern times were Chen Qubing, Fei Gong, etc.

At present, Tuisi Garden in Tongli ancient town has been listed as one of the world's Cultural Heritage, and Tongli ancient town is applying for it. With the reinforcement of publicity, an increasing number of people are aware of and familiar with the ancient town. Many newspaper media in mainland, Hong Kong and America introduce Tongli with illustrations; many shooting crews come to Tongli frequently, and Tongli Shooting Base was established here by China Film Association due to its natural film studio renowned both home and abroad.

Special Mention

Tuisi Garden

Tuisi Garden was built from 1885 AD to 1887 AD. It is originally owned by Ren Lansheng. The name originates from "Be loyal to the emperor when serving the court and reflect upon oneself when retreating from the post" in Tso Chuan. Its designer Yuan Long took actions that suited the local circumstances of Jiangnan Region and finished the Garden in two years after elaborate design.

The 0.65 hectare Garden, simple and unsophisticated, quiet and elegant, is an area with typical architectural style of Jiangnan Garden in late Qing dynasty. Tuisi Garden boasts unique layout with a complete collection of pavilion, terrace, tower, porch, bridge, hall and house centered by pond as if these architectures are floating on it. The compact and natural layout, plants and sceneries of four seasons contribute to a clear, secluded and bright Tuisi Garden.

Tuisi Garden, with the characteristics of garden of Qing dynasty, is a classic work of Jiangnan classical garden. Chinese landscaper Chen Congzhou regards Tuisi Garden as "Waterside Garden" inspired by "The wise find pleasure in water; the virtuous find pleasure in hills" of Confucius. The profound cultural connotation of Tuisi Garden, together with the long history of Tongli, makes tourists fall into reverie and enlightenment. In 2001, Tuisi Garden was listed as world's Cultural Herit-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

age.

Major Scenic Sites

1. Jiayin Hall

Jiayin Hall, established in 1912, is located in the front part of Youjia Lane in Zhuxing Street; it has four entrances and all the doors, windows and beams are well-carved. Its owner Liu Bingnan, original Beishe people, started oil mill in Luxu at the very beginning, and moved to Tongli to build luxurious residence which cost 20 000 grams silver after becoming rich. Liu Bingnan and the famous patriotic poet Liu Yazi are of the same clan.

The main architecture of Jiayin Hall, commonly referred to as "Gauze Cap Hall", imitates the architectural style of Ming dynasty. It got such a name because the front beam is like the cap wing in Ming dynasty. The high and spacious court is solemn and grand. The symmetric two sides of five beams are carved with Eight Horses, and the two ends of beams are carved with Phoenix and Peony. Such patterns as Satisfaction and Destined to be selected are carved at the back of beams. What's more rare is that the gauze cap wings (i. e. the front beam) are carved with eight pictures in Romance of Three Kingdoms including Meeting in Ancient Town, Three Big Persons (Liu Bei, Guan Yu and Zhang Fei) Fighting against Lv Bu, etc.. All the figures in these pictures are vividly portrayed.

2. Chongben Hall

Located on the northern side of Changqing Bridge in Fu Guan Street, Chongben Hall is built by water facing the south; the group of architectures develops in depth revolving around the axle wire, with five entrances including entrance hall, hall, front building, back building and kitchen. The one-mu Chongben Hall, in spite of its small amount of architectures, is laid out compactly and exquisitely. Various sculptures and carvings are the most attractive elements in Chongben Hall.

3. Three bridges

Three bridges indicate Taiping Bridge, Jili Bridge and Changqing Bridge which are arranged in a triangle at the convergences of three rivers, forming ring roads in the town. Tongli people like walking across the three bridges. If someone celebrates marriage, the celebration group will walk across the three bridges full of joy accompanied by hilarious drum music and fireworks, praying aloud, " peace, auspiciousness and everlasting happiness!" and residents along the street will come out to view the occasion, extending their congratulations; if old people celebrate their 66-year-old birthday, they will certainly walk across the three bridges after

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

lunch for auspiciousness. It is unknown to all when the custom of "walking across three bridges" started, but for Tongli people, three bridges symbolize auspiciousness and happiness.



The small and exquisite Taiping Bridge was built during the reign of emperor Jiaqing of the Qing dynasty; Jili Bridge is an arch bridge and inscribed with age-old couplets describing the beautiful painting-like views at either end; Changqing Bridge, also named Guangli Bridge, was originally constructed in 1470 and rebuilt by Xiezhen in 1704. Ternate Bridges are propitious symbols in the eyes of the local residents and they walk over them for good luck during wedding or birthday parties. The oldest bridge in Tongli is Reflecting Origin (Siben) Bridge which was built in the Song Dynasty (960 ~ 1279) while the smallest bridge is called Single Step (Dubu) which is only one and a half meter (5 feet) in length and less than one meter (3 feet) in width. Standing motionless for hundreds of years, the bridges bear witness to the vicissitudes of history and remain an indispensable part of the township.

4. Luoxing Islet

Luoxing Islet is a sacred place with the combination of Buddhism, Taoism and Confucianism, and is an islet floating on lake in the east of Tongli Town. Tourists only have to spend several minutes getting there by boat.

The historic records reveal that Luoxing Islet was originally built in Yuan dynasty and was rebuilt in the reign period of Emperor Guangxu of Qing dynasty; the place of interest in that period brought the old people in Tongli many beautiful memories.

Other Attractions Around the Place

Xiaodian Lake Forest Park

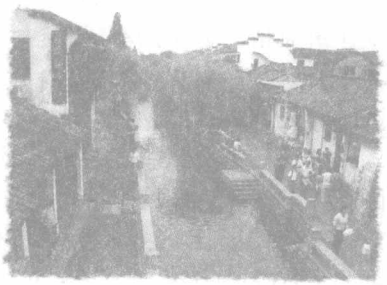
Wujiang Xiaodian Lake Forest Park in Jiangsu Province is located in the northeast of Tongli Town in Wujiang, covering an area of around 266.8 hectares (including water area of over 133.4 hectare). It is a place with large area, rich verdur-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ization and good ecology which is rarely seen in Jiangnan region. Some tourist and sightseeing resorts have been gradually formed including metasequoia forest, pond cypress forest, loquat garden, kapur garden, gingko garden, etc. The Park boasts flourishing woods reflected on the surrounding lake and is dotted with green fields and smoking curling upwards, forming the beauty of fields which will make tourists return to nature.

千年古镇同里
Tongli——Millennium Eldest Town

自然概况



同里隶属江苏省吴江市，位于太湖沿岸，古运河之东，八湖环抱；距离东边的上海虹桥机场80公里，离北边的苏州18公里，南边连接苏州至嘉兴的318国道。2001年，同里和屯村合并后，同里镇行政区域总占地102.91平方公里，下辖12个行政村，总人口58 000人，还有一个水产品生产基地，6个社区居委会。

同里，旧称富土，由于这个名字太过奢华，故于初唐时期改为“铜里”。现在的名字“同里”可以追述到宋朝，那时候的人重新创造了“富”和“土”两个字。

风景优美的同里古镇镶嵌在五湖（同里湖、九里湖、叶泽湖、南星湖和庞山湖）之中。小镇有15条河，被分成七个小岛。小河的排列呈“川”字型，49座古桥使这些小岛连接成一个整体。以“小桥、流水、人家”而著称的濒河建筑群使同里古镇成为保存最好的濒河古镇和太湖风景区13大景点之一的省级重点文物保护单位。

同里古镇1986年对外开放，1995年被江苏省政府列为首批江苏历史文化名城。

优美秀丽的同里小镇以其沃野良田和丰富的自然资源而素有“小东方威尼斯”之称。明清时期建筑多、水乡小桥多，名人志士多是同里古镇的特点。这里有38处明清时期住宅，47座寺庙和祠堂，大约100多处当地大户人家和权贵的住宅和名人雅士的故居。同里古镇历史上有20多处自然景观，包括八景、续八景、后四景

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

等，至今尚丰“东溪望月”、“南市晓烟”、“北山春眺”、“水村渔笛”、“长山岚翠”等景点。

同里人勤奋好学、知书达理，这里曾走出了许多杰出名人。从1247年南宋时期到晚清时期，同里先后出了一位状元，42位进士和93位文武举人。

同里古代名人有朱鹤龄、袁龙等；现代名人则有陈去病、费巩等。

目前，同里的退思园被列为世界文化遗产之一。同里古镇正在申请世界文化遗产。随着宣传的广泛深入，越来越多的人开始了解这个古镇。大陆、香港和美国的许多新闻媒体都用图文并茂的形式介绍同里；许多影视摄制组也频繁来同里取景。由于同里拥有蜚声海内外的这一天然摄影棚，中国电影家协会也在此设立了“中国同里影视摄制基地”。

特别提醒

退思园

退思园的建立历时两年(1885～1887)。园主叫任兰生，园名“退思”二字取自于《左传》“进思尽忠，退思补过”之意。退思园的设计者袁龙根据江南水乡特点，因地制宜，精巧构思，用两年(公元1885～1887年)的时间完成了此园的建设。

退思园有0.65公顷的庭院，简朴无华，素静淡雅，具有典型的晚清时期江南庭院建筑风格。退思园布局独树一帜，有亭、台、楼、廊、桥、厅和堂等。这些建筑以池为中心，如浮水上。自然紧凑的布局、连同各种植物和四季的景色，使退思园透出清澈、幽静和明朗之感。

退思园具有清朝庭院的特征，是江南古典庭院的经典之作。园林学家陈从周因孔子的“智者乐水，仁者乐山”而得灵感，称退思园为“贴水阁”。退思园以其深刻的文化内涵，联接同里渊源流长的历史，给人以遐想和启迪。2001年，退思园被列为世界文化遗产。

主要景点

1. 嘉荫堂

嘉荫堂建于1912年，位于竹行街尤家弄口；有四个入口，门、窗、梁皆雕刻精美。房主柳炳南，北厍人，先丁芦墟开设油坊，发迹后迁于同里营建宅第，共耗白银两万两。柳炳南与著名爱国诗人柳亚子先生同宗。



嘉荫堂主建筑系仿明代结构，俗称“纱帽厅”。因梁头棹木像明代官帽的帽翅，故名。该庭院高大宽敞，肃穆庄重。五架梁两侧中心刻有“八骏图”，梁两端刻有“风穿牡丹”。梁底则刻有“称心如意”、“必定高中”等图案。更为罕见的是“纱帽翅”(即梁头棹木)上刻有《三国演义》中的“古城会”、“三英战吕布”等八幅戏文透雕，形象逼真，呼之欲出。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

2. 崇本堂

崇本堂位于富观街长庆桥北堍，坐北朝南，面水而筑；建筑群围绕中轴线而建造，共有五个入口，包括门厅、大厅、前房、后房和厨房。占地一亩的崇本堂，尽管只有少数几座建筑，却排列精巧紧凑。各种各样的雕刻和雕塑是崇本堂最具吸引力的元素。

3. 三桥

三桥是指太平桥、吉利桥和长庆桥。三桥呈“品”字型，跨于三河交汇处，自然形成环行街道。同里人喜欢“走三桥”。每逢婚嫁喜庆，在欢快的鼓乐鞭炮声中，喜气洋洋绕行三桥，口中长长念一声“太平吉利长庆”！沿街居民纷纷出户观望，上街道喜祝贺；凡逢老人六十六岁生日，午餐后必定也去“走三桥”，以图吉利。“走三桥”的习俗，形成何年难以查考，但三桥在同里人的心中，象征着吉祥和幸福。

小巧玲珑的太平桥建于清朝嘉庆年间；吉利桥为拱形桥，桥之南北两侧都有描绘桥对面如画景致的桥联。长庆桥，又称广利桥，始建于1470年，1704年由谢真重建。三桥在当地人的眼中是吉利的象征，结婚或庆生时走过三桥是为了寻求好运。同里最老的桥是思本桥，建于宋朝(960～1279)。最小的桥叫做独步桥，只有1.5米长，宽不足1米。这些桥屹立百年，目睹了历史的兴衰，也是连接各个城区的不可缺少的一部分。

4. 罗星洲



罗星洲是一个集佛教、道教、儒教于一体的圣地，位于同里镇东，是一座湖中小岛。游客乘小船只要五分钟就能到达此处。

据史书记载，罗星洲最初建于元朝，后几经损毁，于清朝光绪年间重建。在那时，这个风景名胜区曾给同里老人心中留下许多美好的回忆。

周边名胜

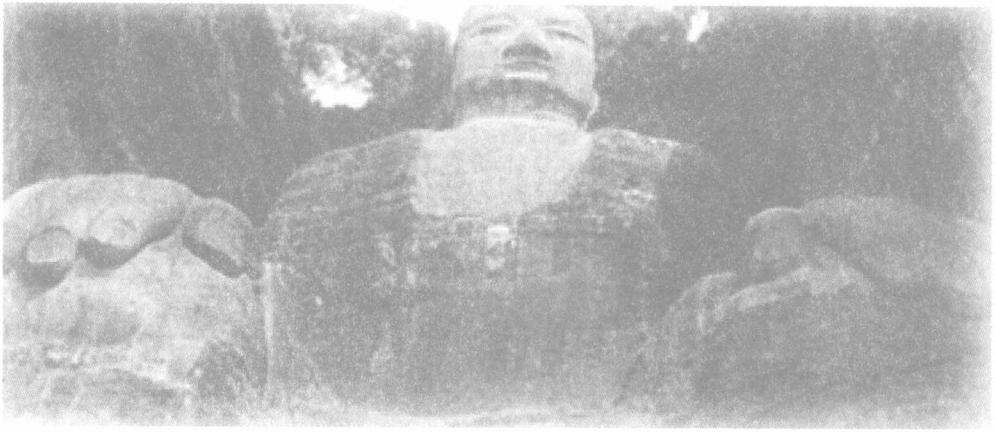
肖甸湖森林公园

吴江肖甸湖森林公园位于吴江市同里镇东北部，面积约266.8公顷(包括133.4公顷水域)。这座公园面积大，绿化好，生态佳，是江南少有的好地方。园内已初步建成水杉林、池杉林、枇杷园、香樟园、银杏园、桃园、药草园、翠梨园、竹林园、苗圃、鱼塘等旅游观光区。公园以同里湖泊交相辉映，农田点翠，农家炊烟袅袅为荣，形成一派美好的田园风光，使人们有一种返璞归真的感觉。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chapter 3 西南地区 Southwest China

峨眉山——乐山大佛 Mt. Emei and Leshan Giant Buddha



Natural Features

Mt. Emei Scenic area includes Leshan Giant Buddha, and it is located in Emeishan City of Sichuan Province with the Giant Buddha sitting at the confluence of Minjiang, Dadu, and Qingyi rivers.

Mount Emei rises in the southwestern part of the Chengdu Plain in Emeishan City, with its highest peak being 3 099 meters above sea level. The craggy southern part of the mountain is crisscrossed by ravines and covered with a dense growth of plants, while the northern part features sheer precipices, and waterfalls cascading down the slope.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Mount Emei is called the "mountain of brightness" in Buddhism. The legend goes that the Guangxiang Temple on the mountain top was where the goddess of benevolence performed Buddhist rituals, thus making it one of the four famous sacred mountains of Buddhism in China. There used to be over 100 temples and halls on the mountain, but only some 20 still stand. The Baoguo Temple situated at the foot of the mountain is the largest temple on Mount Emei, built during the Ming Dynasty (1368 ~ 1644). The red copper Huayan Pagoda inside the temple is an important relic for studying Chinese Buddhism. The 14-storyed pagoda is seven meters high and its walls are engraved with more than 4 700 images of Buddha and the full text of the Buddhist Sutra of the Huayan Sect.

The Giant Buddha of Leshan is carved on Lingyun Hill, east of Leshan City, which is not far away from Mount Emei. The solemn Buddha is 71 meters high and its head itself is 14.7 meters high. Its ear is 6.2 meters long, eye 3.3 meters wide, and shoulder 34 meters wide. Its head is covered with 1 021 chignons. Its middle finger is 8.3 meters long, and each of the feet are 11 meters long and 8.5 meters wide, large enough to accommodate more than 100 people sitting on it. The huge figure sits with his hands resting on his knees, his head reaching the hilltop and his feet the river, occupying the entire hillside.



Surrounded by the charm of both the mountains and rivers, Leshan Giant Buddha integrates both the beauty of a natural heritage and the gems of human culture. In the area of 2.5 square kilometres there are 2 sites under Class I state protection and 4 sites under Class II state protection.

The Giant Buddha faces the historic and cultural Leshan City on the other side of the river. The Giant Buddha is the center of the scenic area, and around it, there are a number of sites of interest, such as the Detached Mound from the irrigation system of Dujiang Weir by Li Bing in Qin Dynasty, the cliff-tomb clusters of Han Dynasty, Buddhist figure carvings, pagodas, and temples of Tang and song Dynasties, as well as architectural groups of Ming and Qing Dynasties.

Mount Emei and the Leshan Giant Buddha have now been unified into one scenic area and were put on the world cultural and natural heritage lists in 1996.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Special Mention

Mt. Emei is known as one of the four primary shrine mountains of Buddhism in China and the famous national park. The mountain stretches out for 23km from south to north, occupying an area of about 115km^2. Viewed from afar, its catchy Da'e and Er'e hills stand side by side in quite a symmetry, long and thin like the delicate eyebrows of a beautiful maid, hence the name, which literally means "the charming eyebrow of a beautiful maid" in Chinese.

Mt. Emei is a world famous site of tourism, with a miraculous view for each of its hills and a surprise every few steps. There are the recognized top ten scenes of Sunny Clouds over Luofeng Peak, Evening Bells at Shenji Monastery, Clear Sound under Twin Bridges, Morning Rain at Hongchun Terrace, Autumn Breeze over Baishui Monastery, Nine Sages' Residence, Elephant Pond in Moonlight, Overhanging Greenery at Linyan Rock, Snow World at Daping Monastery, and Buddha's Halo at Golden Summit. There are the four natural wonders of Buddha's Halo, Cloud Sea, Sunrise, and Holy Lamps.

Major Scenic Sites

Nation Dedicating Temple area: Archway of "Famous Mountain under the Sun"
Bell Pavilion on Phoenix Mound
Nation Dedicating Temple
Tiger Taming Temple
Leiyin Temple
Chunyang Hall
Holy Water Pavilion
Central Peak Temple
Tourist Center of Mt. Emei
Lingxiu Amusement Park
Mt. Emei Museum

Clear Sound Pavilion area: Clear Sound Pavilion
Bull Heart Temple
Walkway of One Thread of Sky
Hongchun Terrace
Ninety-nine Turns
Immortal Peak Temple
Nine Sage's Cave

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Immortal Encountering Temple
Ecological zone of monkeys

Myriad Years Temple area: Myriad Years Temple
White Dragon Cave
Mind Becalming Place
Vatamsaka Summit

Golden Summit area: Elephant Bathing Pond
Thunder Caves Terrace
Guidance Hall
Prince Terrace
Huazang Temple of Golden Summit
Thousand Buddha Peak
Ten Thousand Buddha Peak

Other Attractions Around the Place

Leshan Giant Buddha
Oriental Land of Buddha
Lingyun Temple
Cave of Master Hai Tong
Mahao Cliff Tombs
Colossal Lying Buddha
Lingbao Pagoda
Buddhist Paradise
Nine Bends Walkway

峨眉山——乐山大佛
Mt. Emei and Leshan Giant Buddha

自然概况

峨眉山风景名胜区包括乐山大佛，位于四川省峨眉山市。乐山大佛位于峨眉山以东的岷江、大渡河、青衣江三江汇流处。

峨眉山伫立在峨眉山市成都平原的西南部，最高处海拔 3 099 米。山脉陡峭崎岖的南部河流交错，植被浓密，而北部只有悬崖峭壁，瀑布沿着陡崖喷流而下。

佛教中峨眉山叫作“大光明山”。传说山顶上的广相寺是慈善女神举行佛教仪式的地方，因此使峨眉山成为“中国佛教四大名山”之一。过去山上约有 100 多座

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

寺堂，但现在仅存约20座。位于山脚下的报国寺建于明朝（1368～1644）年间，是峨眉山上最大的寺庙。该庙庙内红铜色的华严塔是研究中国佛经的重要文物。华严塔共14层，高7米，塔身铸有4 700多个佛像，还刻有《华严经》全文。



乐山大佛依乐山市东部距峨眉山不远的凌云山而凿造。庄严的大佛身高71米，头高14.7米，耳长6.2米，眼宽3.3米，肩宽34米。大佛头上盘有1 021个发髻，其中指长8.3米，每只脚长11米，宽8.5米，脚面可围坐百人以上。大佛双手抚膝而坐，头与山齐，足踏大江，占据了整个山坡。

乐山大佛景区山水交融，将人文遗产精粹和自然遗产融于一身。在这块2.5平方公里的区域内，有国家一级保护文物两处、二级保护文物四处。

乐山大佛与乐山城隔江相望。景区以大佛为中心，周边有许多风景名胜，如秦蜀守李冰开凿的离堆，汉代崖墓群，唐宋佛像、宝塔、寺庙，明清建筑群等等。

峨嵋山——乐山大佛已被合为一个景点，并于1996年被列入《世界文化与自然遗产》。

特别提醒

峨眉山是中国佛教四大名山之一和国家级风景名胜区。峨眉山山体南北延伸，绵延23公里，面积约115平方公里。远远望去，大峨、二峨两山并列对峙，细而绵长，宛如美女的娥眉，故得此名。

峨眉山是闻名中外的旅游胜地，山山有奇景，十里不同天，形成了萝峰晴云、圣积晚钟、双桥清音、洪椿晓雨、白水秋风、九老仙府、象池月夜、灵岩叠翠、大坪霁雪、金顶祥光十大胜景，有佛光、云海、日出、圣灯四大自然景观。

主要景点

报国寺景区：“天下名山”牌坊
报国寺
纯阳殿
峨眉山游人中心

清音阁景区：清音阁
洪椿坪
九老洞

万年寺景区：万年寺
华严顶

金顶景区：洗象池
太子坪
万佛顶
凤堡钟亭
伏虎寺
圣水阁
灵秀苑
牛心寺
九十九道拐
遇仙寺
白龙洞
雷洞坪
金顶华藏寺
圣积晚钟
雷音寺
中峰寺
博物馆
“一线天”栈道
仙峰寺
生态猴区
息心所
接引殿
千佛顶

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

周边名胜

乐山大佛
东方佛都
凌云禅院
海师洞
麻浩岩墓
巨型睡佛
灵宝塔
佛国天堂
九曲栈道

九寨沟
Jiuzhaigou Gully

Natural Features

Situated in the depths of the mountains in the border area of Nanping, Songpan and Pingwu counties in Aba Tibetan and Qiang Autonomous Prefecture of northwestern Sichuan, is a fairyland called Jiuzhaigou—Nine-Village Gully. Until recent years, it had remained undisturbed in high mountains due to its inaccessibility, except by some horse trails or mountain paths. Scattered along the gully with the alpine lakes are nine Tibetan settlements, hence the name Jiuzhaigou, meaning "nine villages gully".



Jiuzhaigou Scenic area refers to the "Y" shaped three gullies of Shuzheng, Rize and Zechawa, altogether covering an area of 720km^2 and stretching out for a total length of over 50km. It is a habitat of Tibetans, and geologically a cold alpine Karst topography in nature. The nine villages and the mountain lakes, called "haizi" (sea or son of sea), shining like crystal mirrors, dot in the depth of forests and snow mountains. At the upper most

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

lies the Long Lake, while the Grass Lake is the end of Rize Gully. The two gullies run down northward and join together at Nuorilang to form the beginning of Shuzheng Gully. The height drop amounts to 1 000m or more from the joint of the two gullies to the outlet of Shuzheng Gully. Lining along the distance are 114 stepped lakes (The water is so clear that the bottom is visible despite depths of several dozen meters), between which are 17 waterfall groups (Waterfalls are the essence of the scenery in Jiuzhaigou), 11 torrents, and 5 calcareous tufa shoals, forming "a fairy land under the sky" that features in alpine lake groups, waterfall groups, and calcareous tufa shoals, as well as snow mountains, virgin forests, and Tibetan folklore.

Jiuzhaigou Gully boasts for having the freshest air on the earth, where the horizontal visibility is as far as 50km. The climate there is that of temperate monsoon, sunny, clear, cool in summer but not windy in winter. It is the ideal resort for sightseeing and holidays.

Jiuzhaigou Gully is rich with flora. At present it has 30 000 hectares of natural forests, 2 576 species of higher plants as well as 400 species of lower plants. With the numerous lakes and various vegetation, Jiuzhaigou has a self complete ecological system, which provides the best habitats for wild animals. Investigation shows in the gully there are 170 kinds of vertebrates, and 141 species of birds, of which 3 are under Class I state protection, 4 under Class II, and 10 under Class III.

In 1982, the State Council of the People's Republic of China recognized Jiuzhaigou Gully as a key scenic area of the nation. In December of 1992 it was inscribed on World Heritage List by UNESCO. In October of 1995 it entered reserves for Man and the Biosphere Program.

Special Mention

Jiuzhaigou Gully is about 2 000m ~ 4 300m above sea level, located at the foot of Garna Peak in the southern section of Minshan Mountain ranges, a branch valley of the source of Jialing River which is an upper part of Yangtze River. The scenic area is accessible all the year round, though in autumn the gully is at its best. For a period of time it was thought unsuitable to tour in winter, yet the newly built Chengdu-Jiuzhaigou tour highway unveiled its winter beauty to the sightseers. Since the first "Winter Tour to Jiuzhaigou" in 1998, an increasing number of admirers are rushing in for a special winter sight enjoyment, particularly in the holidays of Spring Festival, when hotel rooms are hardly available without booking early in advance.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Major Scenic Sites

Shuzheng Gully tour route: Gully entrance
Bonsai Shoal
Reed Lake
Twin Dragons Lake
Sparkling Lake
Lying Dragon Lake
Shuzheng Lakes
Shuzheng Waterfall
Shuzheng Village
Rhino Lake

Rize Gully tour route: Virgin forest
Hanging Spring of Sword Cliff
Grass Lake
Swan Lake
Eagle Claw Cave
Arrow Bamboo Lake and Panda Lake
Panda Lake Waterfall
Five Flower Lake
Peacock River
Pearl Shoal
Pearl Shoal Waterfall
Mirror Lake
Nuorilang Lake
Nuorilang Waterfall

Zechawa Gully tour route: Long Lake
Colorful Pond
Upper Seasonal Lake and Lower Seasonal Lake

Zharu Gully tour route: Magic Mirror Cliff
Zharu Bridge and Zharu Horse Trail
Zharu Temple
Holy Mt Zhayizhaga

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Other Attractions Around the Place

Zechawa Gully　　Shenxianchi Scenic Area



九寨沟
Jiuzhaigou Gully

自然概况

九寨沟位于四川西北部阿坝的南坪、松潘和平武三县交界之处的崇山峻岭之中，是一片深藏不露的人间仙境。多少年来，这里一直交通不便，只有马道和山间小路。这里有九个藏族村寨散落在高山湖泊群中，因而得名九寨沟。

九寨沟是岷山山脉中呈“Y”字形分布的树正、日则、则查洼三条沟谷的总称。风景区面积约720平方公里，总长50多公里，属世界高寒喀斯特地貌。当地为藏族聚居区，九个村寨和许多被称为“海子”的高山湖泊仿佛一面面明亮的镜子，神奇地镶嵌在雪山森林深处。则查洼沟的尽端是长湖，日则沟的尽端是草湖，两沟由南向北在诺日朗合为树正沟。两沟尽端湖泊至树正沟口高差1 000余米，其间有呈梯级分布的大小湖泊114个（湖水之清，虽深达好几十米，也能清澈见底）、湖泊之间有17个瀑布群（瀑布是九寨沟风景的精华）、11段激流、5处钙华滩流，相串相联，形成以高山湖泊群、瀑布群以及钙华滩流为特色，集湖、瀑、滩、流、雪峰、森林、藏族风情于一体的人间仙境。

九寨沟拥有堪称地球上最清新的空气，其大气水平能见度达50公里。九寨沟属温带季风气候，特点是晴天多、云雾少、夏日凉爽、冬无烈风，是旅游、观光、度假之佳地。

九寨沟植物种类繁多，现有天然森林近3万公顷，高等植物2 576种，低等植物400余种。九寨沟湖泊众多，植被多样，生态系统完整，为各种野生动物栖居繁衍提供了良好的条件。据调查，现有脊椎动物170种、鸟类141种，属国家一类保护的有3种、二类保护的有4种、三类保护的有10种。

1982年，中华人民共和国国务院审定九寨沟为国家重点风景名胜区。1992年12月，九寨沟被联合国教科文组织作为自然遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。1995年10月，九寨沟又荣获联合国人与生物圈委员会颁发的《人与生物圈保护区》证书。

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

九寨沟地处岷山山脉南段尕尔纳峰北麓，是长江水系嘉陵江源头的一条支沟，海拔2 000 米～4 300 米。九寨沟一年四季均可旅游，以秋季为最佳。过去人们都以为九寨沟的冬季不能旅游，但是随着成都——九寨沟旅游公路的开通，人们发现九寨沟冬季之美是养在深闺人未识。自 1998 年首推“九寨沟冬之旅”以来，冬游九寨一年比一年火爆，特别是春节期间，若不提前订房，根本就不能保证旅游团队的入住。

主要景点

树正沟风景线：沟口　盆景滩　芦苇海
双龙海　火花海　卧龙海
树正群海　树正瀑布　树正寨
犀牛海

日则沟风景线：原始森林　剑岩悬泉　芳草海
天鹅海　鹰爪洞　箭竹海、熊猫海
熊猫海瀑布　五花海　孔雀河道
珍珠滩　珍珠滩瀑布　镜海
诺日朗群海　诺日朗瀑布

则查洼沟风景区：长海　五彩池　上季节海、下季节海

扎如沟风景线：宝镜崖　扎如桥、扎如马道
扎如寺　扎依扎嘎神山

周边名胜

则查洼沟段　神仙池风景区



黄龙
Yellow Dragon Scenic Area

Natural Features

Huanglong (Yellow Dragon) Scenic Area, also in northern Sichuan's Aba Tibetan and Qiang Autonomous Prefecture, neighbors the Jiuzhaigou Scenic Area. It was named after the ancient Huanglong Temple within the area.

The scenic area covers about 700km^2, of which the Yellow Dragon Gully takes

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

up 600km^2, while the subdivision Mouni Gully occupies the other 100km^2. The area has well preserved tectonic zones, glacial remains, and river source topography. It is well known for the "four wonders" of colorful ponds, snow mountains, alpine gorges, and forests. The huge travertine formation is like a golden dragon winding among the virgin forests, cliffs, and icy peaks, constituting the amazing, precipitous, majestic, and wild environmental features of Yellow Dragon scenic area.



The most remarkable scene in the area is the Huanglong Valley noted for its unique open karst landscape. The main attraction of the valley is the 3. 6-kilometer-long and 30 to 70-meter-wide pale yellow calcareous deposits. At the end of the valley, water from melting snow mixes with limestone water from underground, flowing down the mountain terraces, depositing the calcium carbonate from the limestone water on the rocks, stones, and fallen branches in its path. The calcium carbonate, in turn, develops into solid, low travertine banks and reacts chemically with organic and inorganic substances, resulting in various kinds of calcareous deposits that reflect a golden color in the sunlight in the water that flows down the slopes just like a huge yellow dragon flying down the snow mountain. When water flows into two separate streams, it naturally turns into more colorful lakes and waterfalls, forming a ladder-shaped lake group. The water is crystal clear. The mineral deposits at the lake bottom look like jadeite and agate - magnificent and beautiful.

The altitude of the area is over 3 000m above sea level, with snow peaks like a forest, of which 7 are over 5 000m high, while the highest Snow Treasure Peak (Xuebaoding) is 5 588m above sea level, which is the summit of Mt Minshan and capped with snow all year round. In the area are also preserved a wealth of rare plants and animals, including 1 500 species of higher plants, most of which are only found in China and 11 of them are under Class I to Class III state protection. As for the rare animals, there are giant panda, golden snub-nosed monkey, takin, cloud leopard, white-lipped deer, brown-eared pheasant, and white-eared pheasant, all under state protection as Class I to Class III endangered animals.

The Huanglong Temple is situated on the top of the scenic area. South of the temple is Xuebaoding, the main peak of the snow-capped Minshan Mountain. Ris-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ing 5 588 meters above sea level, it is covered in snow all year round.

The scenic area was made a world natural heritage site in 1992.

Special Mention

The most amazing travertine formations in the area are those in Yellow Dragon Gully. The travertine formations in the gully fall in eight groups, consisting of over 3 400 travertine pools linked together by travertine waterfalls and shoal flows to form a complete hydrological whole before joining in the source of Fujiang River.

Each colorful pool of the eight groups is different in size, shape, and feature. The first group at the gully entrance are Flower Bathing (Xihua) lakes, blended with the greens of thick trees. They are situated with a beauty of variation and order, like mirrors inlaid on the golden or silver travertine formations, shining under the azure blue sky as the introduction to the attractions in the gully. Waters burble down from one step to another, tinkling as a welcome melody, and visitors warmly name it as Guest Welcoming Pond. The highest group of Jadeite Bathing Ponds are made up of 693 colorful pools, altogether occupying 21 056m^2 as the largest pond group in Yellow Dragon area. Rich in all colors in the sunshine, the ponds are just like brilliant dishes of green jade. The ancient logs and vines sunk in the water are turned into artistic treasures by the travertine through the years, creating an underwater world with infinite illusions.

Major Scenic Sites

Yellow Dragon Gully area: Guest Welcoming Ponds
Rosy Flying Waterfalls
Body Washing Grotto
Bonsai Pond
Ancient Yellow Dragon Monastery
Yellow Dragon Grotto
Stone Pagoda Guarding the Lake
Revolving Flower Pond
Temple Fair of Yellow Dragon Monastery

Red Cloud Gorge area: Bamboo Shoot (Yusun) Cliff
Squatting Cat (Mao'er Dun)
Mercy Goddess Cliff
Praise Words Stele
Iron Fan Pass

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Stone Horse Pass
Icy Rocks
Dragon Trickles
Stove Door Rock

Other Attractions Around the Place

Mouni Gully area: Zhaga Waterfall
Erdao Lake
Swan Lake
Flowery Lake
Rhino Lake
Remains of the ancient town of Songpan
Yellow Dragon Gully
Hongyuan Prairie



黄龙
Yellow Dragon Scenic Area

自然概况

黄龙风景名胜区位于川北的阿坝藏族和羌族自治区，与九寨沟风景名胜区毗邻，因此处的古黄龙寺而得名。

黄龙风景名胜区面积为700平方公里，其中，黄龙本部面积600平方公里，牟尼沟部分面积100平方公里。黄龙风景名胜区的地质结构、冰川遗存、江源地貌保护完好，以彩池、雪山、峡谷、森林“四绝”著称于世。巨型地表钙华坡谷，如一条金色巨龙，蜿蜒于原始林海和石山冰峰之间，构成了黄龙奇、峻、雄、野的环境特色。

这儿最引人注目的景色是黄龙沟。黄龙沟因其独特的开放式岩溶景观而出名。沟内的主要风景是一条长3.6千米，宽30～70米的浅黄色地表钙华堆积体。在沟的尽头，融化的雪水与来自地下的灰岩水混在一起流下梯田。沿途岩石、石头和落枝上的石灰水沉积了碳酸钙。碳酸钙反过来又凝聚成坚硬的钙华浅堰，与有机物、无机物发生化学反应，形成各种各样的钙质沉积。在阳光下，这些钙质沉积在如同一条从雪山上飞泄而下的黄色巨龙般顺坡流下的水中反射出金色的光芒。这些水流入两条独立的小溪时，便很自然地变成了更加丰富多彩的湖泊和瀑布，形

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

成了一个梯状湖群。湖水清澈见底，湖底的矿物沉积如同华丽精美的翡翠和玛瑙一般。



黄龙海拔在3 000米以上，区内雪峰林立，5 000米以上高峰就有7座。最高峰雪宝峰为岷山主峰，海拔5 588米，终年积雪。区内有珍贵的动植物种质资源，其中，高等植物达1 500余种，多为中国特有种类，属国家一至三类保护植物的有11种；珍稀动物有大熊猫、金丝猴、牛羚、云豹、白唇鹿、红腹角?、藏马鸡等国家一至三类保护动物。

黄龙寺位于黄龙风景名胜区的顶端。寺南是雪山岷山主峰雪宝顶，海拔5 588米，山上常年积雪。

黄龙风景名胜区于1992年被列入《世界自然遗产名录》。

特别提醒

黄龙地表钙华景观以黄龙沟最为出色。沟内共有8群彩池，3 400余个钙华池，由钙华滩流、钙华瀑布等相连、相串，注入涪江源流，形成一个完整的水文地质单元。

这八群彩池，规模不同，形态各异，各具特色。洗花池群，为进沟第一池群。它们掩映在一片葱郁的密林之中，众多彩池参差错落，排列有序，如一面面明镜镶在似金如银的钙华体上，蓝光闪烁，揭开了黄龙景区的序幕。池水层层跌落，叮咚水声似悠扬悦耳的迎宾曲，被游人亲切地称之为“迎宾池”。最高层的浴玉池群，由693个彩池组成，面积21 056平方米，为黄龙最大的一个彩池群。个个彩池宛如片片碧色玉盘，在阳光照射下显得五彩缤纷。湖中的古木、老藤，被钙华塑成一件件艺术珍品，使水下世界展现无限幻觉。

主要景点

黄龙沟风景区：迎宾池　飞瀑流辉
洗身洞　盆景池
黄龙寺　黄龙洞
石塔镇海　转花池

丹云峡风景区：玉笋岩　猫儿蹲
观音岩　赞字碑
铁扇关　石马关
凌冰岩　龙滴水
灶孔岩

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

周边名胜

牟尼景区:扎嘎瀑布,二道海
松州城遗址
黄龙沟
红原大草原

青城山——都江堰
Mt. Qingcheng and Dujiang Weir

Natural Features

Mt. Qingcheng is 15km from Dujiangyan City proper and 68km from Chengdu City. It is the eastern ridge of southern Qionglai Mountains. The summit of Mt. Qingcheng is Bamian Mountain (also called Zhaogong Mountain). Mt. Qingcheng comprises rolls of verdant mountains with 36 peaks, 8 primary caves, 72 minor caves, and 108 scenic attractions. It is admired nation wide for its "peerless tranquility" and its historical sites of Taoist culture. In 1982, it was recognized as one of the first group of national key sites of historical and scenic interest.



As for the origin of its name Qingcheng, or "green city" as the Chinese means, the folks are divided in two beliefs. One is that the layout of Mt. Qingcheng is in line with the 36 arrangements of Yin and Yang, surrounded in the pure verdure outlining the area as a green city. The other explanation says that "Mt. Green City" was actually named as "Mt. Pure City", pronounced exactly the same and written almost the same in Chinese except that

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

the latter has three additional dots at the left for the character "pure". It was called "pure" because Chinese mythology says that one has to be "pure and lofty for concentration" and Heaven God stays at "Pure Capital or Purple Profundity". Indeed, it was called "Mt. Pure City" since Han Dynasty, but when Emperor Xuanzong of Tang Dynasty decided to return it to Taoists, in his decree he forgot the three dots and wrote "green" for "pure" by mistake, thereafter the mountain became "Mt. Green City". A stone stele inscribed with the imperial decree is still kept in Hall of Three Emperors.

Dujiang Weir, or Dujiangyan Irrigation System, is located west of Dujiangyan City, Sichuan Province. Originally it was called Du'an Weir after the name of the ancient Du'an County, where the weir was situated. Since Song and Yuan Dynasties it was given the present name Dujiang Weir, honored as the "Guarding Treasure of Sichuan Province" that is "ingenious of all times".

The irrigation system was constructed in 227 BC by Li Bing, governor of Shu Prefecture, over 2 200 years ago. It is not only the earliest water control project in China, but also the only and the oldest remain of such in the whole world. Characterized in its successful control of water without any blocking dam, Dujiang Weir is a milestone in the history of technology in China.

In December of 2000, both Mt. Qingcheng and Dujiang Weir were inscribed by UNESCO in World Heritage List as cultural heritages of the human world.

Special Mention

It is commonly admitted that "the tranquility of Mt. Qingcheng is the utmost", and admired for its tranquil infinity of forests, tranquil peace of ancient paths, tranquil fragrance of mountain flowers, tranquil humor of bird twitters, tranquil elegance of pavilions and towers, tranquil affection of streams, tranquil profundity of caves, and tranquil conception of couplets. In short, nowhere in Mt. Qingcheng is not hidden with something tranquil.

The well known spots of interest in Mt. Qingcheng include: Lofty Purity Palace (ShangqingGong), Luck Founding Palace (Jianfu Gong), Heaven Master Cave (Tianshi Dong), and Natural Pictures (Tianran Tuhua). Luck Founding Palace is at the foot of Senior's Peak, but only two halls and three courtyards of it have survived to the present. A clean stream flanks in its front and adds to the tranquil charm of its surrounding. About 1km west is Natural Pictures, marked by a tower built in the reign of Emperor Guangxu of Qing Dynasty, where dark cliffs rise up with green trees in mist like frames of beautiful pictures.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Major Scenic Sites

Qingcheng Front Mountain: Luck Founding Palace
Natural Pictures
Heaven Master Cave
Founding Master Palace
Sun Facing Cave
Lofty Purity Palace

Qingcheng Rear Mountain: Tai'an Temple
Immortals Cave
Flying Spring Gorge
White Cloud Caves

Dujiang Weir: Fish Mouth Dividing Dyke
Flying Sand Spillway
Precious Bottleneck Inlet

Dragon-Taming Temple: Stone Statue of Li Bing
Stone Statue of a weir laborer
Flying Dragon Quadripot
Two Kings Temple
Anlan Suspension Bridge

Other Attractions Around the Place

Yulei Pass
Longchi National Forest Park



青城山——都江堰
Mt. Qingcheng and Dujiang Weir

自然概况

青城山距都江堰市中心约15公里，距成都68公里，属邛崃山脉南段的东支，以八面山（又名赵公山）为主峰，山峦重叠，林木葱茏，有36峰、8大洞、72小洞、108景。景区以“幽甲天下”的自然风景和以道教文化为主的文物古迹

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

闻名全国。1982 年，青城山被列入中国第一批重点风景名胜区名单。

青城山的得名有两种说法：一说这里“阴阳三十六状排列，林木葱茏，空翠四合，宛如一个绿色城郭”，故名“青城”；另一说是青城山原名清城山，清字有三点水的偏旁，原出中国古神话“清虚以守神”、“清都、紫微，天帝所居也”，这里在汉晋时期都叫清城山，唐玄宗颁诏决定将清城山归还道教时，将清字写漏三点水，从此就成为“青城山”了，这道诏书刻成为石碑现在还保存在“三皇殿”内。



都江堰，位于四川都江堰市，因古代处于都安县境内而名都安堰，宋元后称都江堰，被誉为“独奇千古”的“镇川之宝”。

都江堰是公元前 227 年由蜀郡守李冰主持兴建的，距今已有 2 200 多年，是中国最古老的水利工程，也是全世界至今为止年代最久、唯一留存、以无坝引水为特征的宏大水利工程。是我国科技史上的一座丰碑。

2000 年 12 月，青城山暨都江堰被联合国教科文组织作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

“青城天下幽”是人们公认的评语。有人描绘它有山林的幽深、古道的幽静、山花的幽香、鸟鸣的幽趣、亭阁的幽雅、溪流的幽情、岩穴的幽邃、楹联的幽意，总之，青城山可谓无处不幽。

青城山全山有 8 大洞、72 小洞。著名的景点有：上清宫、建福宫、天师洞、天然图画等。建福宫，现仅存两殿三院，建在丈人峰下，宫前有一条清溪，四周环境幽美。由此西行一公里，即至天然图画。它是清光绪年间建造的一座阁，苍岩壁立，如入图画。

主要景点

青城前山：建福宫，天然图画，天师洞，祖师殿，朝阳洞，上清宫

青城后山：泰安寺，神仙洞，飞泉沟，白云群洞

都江堰：鱼嘴分水堤，飞沙堰溢洪道，宝瓶口

伏龙观：李冰圆雕石像，堰工石像，飞龙铁鼎

二王庙

安澜索桥

周边名胜

玉垒关

龙池国家森林公园

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

重庆大足石刻
Dazu Rock Carvings in Chongqing City

Natural Features

Dazu is a county at the southeast corner of Sichuan Basin, 271km east of Chengdu, the provincial capital. In the county are scattered in over 20 sites several ten thousand of rock sculptures carved in Tang and Song Dynasties, those of Song Dynasty especially large in number, which are generally referred to as Dazu rock carvings.



The carving began in 650, the first year of Yonghui Period of Tang Dynasty, went on through the Five Dynasties Period and prospered in North and South Song Dynasties. The rock carvings are mainly clustered in Dazu County, at North Hill, Baoding Mountain, South Hill, Rock Gate Hill, and Shizhuan Mountain, which are the representation of the later and mature grotto art in China, renowned for their large scale, refined carving and varied motifs. Altogether there are as many as 75 sites of grottoes with over 50 000 statues and inscriptions of more than 100 000 Chinese characters.

As the representative of Chinese grotto art of its later stage, Dazu rock carvings advanced further in diversity of subject matters, artistic forms, modeling techniques, and aesthetic interests. With their distinctive features of Chinese nationality and real life, they are rated with the grottoes in Dunhuang, Yungang, and Longmen to form a complete history of Chinese grotto art. Moreover, Dazu rock carvings are the best preserved of all those in China, and most of the caves and statues have hardly suffered any serious damage.

With a great wealth of visual images and written data, Dazu rock carvings re-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

veal from all aspects the vital development of the art style of Chinese grottoes and the folks religious believes from the 9th century to the 13th century. They bear a historical, artistic, scientific, and aesthetic value that none of the earlier grottoes could possibly have.

"Pilgrimage to Mt Emei in Emei City if going up, or to Baoding Mountain in Dazu County if going down", this folk saying proves Dazu as a site of interest since ancient times, especially its North Hill and Baoding Mountain which are always crowded with tourists, pilgrims, and preaching monks. Every year on the 19th of the 2nd lunar month (believed to be the birthday of Avalookitesvara), tens of thousands of visitors would rush in to Baoding Mountain, the "Holy mountain on paradise land".

In December of 1999, UNESCO inscribed Dazu rock carvings on the World Heritage List as a cultural heritage.

Special Mention

Different from the grottoes elsewhere in China, Dazu rock carvings are particularly secular and real to human life, thus uplifting the art to an unprecedented level of closing up to the real world. Of all the rock carvings, those on Baoding Mountain cover almost all aspects of the social life, just like a comprehensive gallery of folklore. Modeled in statues are kings and lords, nobles and generals, officials and civilians, scholars and merchants, or farmers and fishermen, all vivid and familiar fellows of the real life. The cliff-face carvings of the "five mountains" provide an all-aspect miniature of the social life of Chinese during the later Tang Dynasty, the Five Dynasties Period, the South and North Song Dynasties. The Indian grotto art through this long time development in China thus completed its localization here and then.

Major Scenic Sites

Cave 136 of Wheel of the Universe on North Hill

Cave 125 of Rosary Avalookitesvara on North Hill

Shengshou Temple on Baoding Mountain

Catalog Stupa on Baoding Mountain

The carvings of Buffaloes and Herdsmen on Baoding Mountain

Cave of Full Enlightenment on Baoding Mountain

Thousand-armed Avalokitesvara on the south cliff at the big Buddha Crescent of Baoding Mountain

Rock carvings on South Hill

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

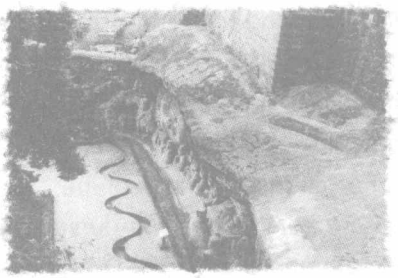
Other Attractions Around the Place

Caves 6,7,8 on Shizhuan Mountain
Caves 2,6,7 on Rock Gate Hill

重庆大足石刻
Dazu Rock Carvings in Chongqing City

自然概况

大足县位于四川盆地东南部，西距成都271公里，东距重庆70公里。大足县境内有几万尊唐宋时期的石刻像，尤以宋刻为多，分布在20多处石刻区内，大足石刻是大足县境内所有石窟造像的总称。



大足石刻始创于唐永徽元年(650)，历经五代而盛于两宋。大足石刻含大足县境内北山、宝顶山、南山、石门山、石篆山等五处摩崖造像，以规模宏大、雕刻精美、题材多样而著称，是我国晚期石窟艺术的代表。石窟多达75处，共有造像5万余躯，石刻铭文10万余字。

作为晚期石刻艺术代表作的大足石刻在题材选择、艺术形式、造型技巧、审美情趣诸方面都较之前代有所突破，以鲜明的民族化、生活化特色，与敦煌、云冈、龙门等石窟一起构成了一部完整的中国石窟艺术史。同时，大足石刻也是中国石窟艺术群中保存最完好的石窟，龛窟与造像绝大多数未遭受过大的破坏。

大足石刻以大量的实物形象和文字史料，从不同侧面展示了公元9世纪末至13世纪中叶间中国石窟艺术风格及民间宗教信仰的重大发展和变化，具有前期各代石窟不可替代的历史、艺术、科学和鉴赏价值。

“上朝峨嵋，下朝宝顶”。大足自古以来就是名胜之地。其中北山、宝顶山更是游客揽胜、信徒进香、僧侣说法的集中地。以“天府灵山”著称的宝顶山，每年的农历二月十九(传为观音菩萨的生日)前后，游客如云，数以万计。

1999年12月，大足石刻被联合国教科文组织作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

大足石刻以其浓厚的世俗信仰、纯朴的生活气息，在石窟艺术中独树一帜，把石窟艺术生活化推到了空前的境地。其中，宝顶山摩崖造像所反映的社会生活情景非常广泛，几乎应有尽有，颇似宋代的一座民间风俗画廊。无论王公大臣、官绅士庶、渔樵耕读，各类人物皆栩栩如生，呼之欲出。大足石刻中的“五山”摩崖造像，从各个侧面浓缩地反映了晚唐、五代和两宋时期的中国社会生活，使源于印度的石窟艺术经过长期的发展，至此完成了中国化的进程。

主要景点

北山的转轮经藏窟
北山的数珠手观音
宝顶山的圣寿寺
宝顶山的经目塔
宝顶山的牧牛图
宝顶山的圆觉洞
宝顶山的千手观音
南山摩崖造像

周边名胜

石篆山的第6、7、8号造像
石门山的第2、6、7号造像

布达拉宫
Potala Palace

Natural Features

The Potala Palace is an ancient architectural complex, considered a model of Tibetan architecture. It is located on the Red Hill in Lhasa, Tibet, being 3 700 meters above sea level. It covers an area of over 360 000 square meters, measuring 360 meters from east to west and 270 meters from south to north. The palace has 13 stories, and is 117 meters high. It is comprehensive with halls, stupas, Buddhist chambers, chapels, monk dormitories, and courtyards, a palace complex largest and highest in the world reputed as “pearl on the world

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

roof".



In 641, Songtsan Gambo, ruler of the Tubo Kingdom, had the Potala Palace built for Princess Wencheng of the Tang Dynasty, whom he was soon to marry. This structure was later burned to the ground during a war and was rebuilt in the 17th century by the Fifth Dalai Lama. Repeated repairs and expansions until 1 645 finally brought the palace to its present scale. Over the past three centuries, the palace gradually became a place where the Dalai Lama lived and worked and a place for keeping the remains of successive Dalai Lama.

The stone-and-wood-structured Potala Palace consists of the White Palace and Red Palace. The White Palace, comprising halls, temples and courtyards, serves as the living quarters of the Dalai Lama. The Red Palace includes various chambers for worshipping Buddha and chambers housing the eight stupa that contain the remains of fifth through thirteenth Dalai Lama. All the stupas are covered with gold foil. The most magnificent stupa belongs to the fifth Dalai Lama. It is 14.85 meters tall and inlaid with pearl and jade. The palace also collected a large number of sculptures, murals, scripture and other valuable cultural relics.

Potala Palace is the masterpiece of Tibetan buildings and the gem of ancient Chinese architecture. The palace integrates with the hill, standing aloft with grandeur and majesty. The walls alternating in red and white, the golden roofs shining with brilliance, it demonstrates in full the appealing charm of ancient Tibetan buildings. It is not only the symbol of the creativity of Tibetan people, but also the unique cultural heritage of human beings on this high and snowy plateau.

Potala Palace is an evidence of the solidarity of all nationalities and the unity of the nation. "Potala" is a transliteration from the Sanskrit for Mt Potala, the mythological mountain abode of Avalookitesvara, God of Mercy. Tibetan Buddhists are said to think their Red Hill is comparable to Mt Potala of Avalookitesvara, hence regard the hill as a second Potala.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

In 1994, the palace joined the list of world cultural heritage sites.

Special Mention

Potala Palace is a treasure house of culture. In a period of over 300 years, it has collected murals of about 2 500m^2, near a thousand stupas, and about 100 000 tangkas, as well as numerous artifacts of gold, silver, bronze, iron, enamel, lacquer, bamboo, ivory, jade, jewelry, brocade, stone inscription, seal, coin, written archives, and religious instruments. The very precious Pattara Leaf Scriptures alone numbers over 500 volumes. Kept in the palace are also the Saria of Sakyamuni, as well as the gold album, jade album, and gold seals issued by the central government from Ming and Qing Dynasties to authorize the Dalai Lama, and the Golden Bumpa Urn bestowed by Emperor Qianlong of Qing Dynasty for identifying the reincarnation of the deceased Dalai Lama.

Major Scenic Sites

Blank Stone Stele
Puntsok Donam Gate
Deyang Shar
White Palace—Residence of the Dalai Lamas
Red Palace—Hall of funerary stupas and sutra halls
Barkhor Street
Jokhang Temple
Minor Jokhang Temple
Gandain/Gaden Monastery
Drepung Monastery
Sera Monastery
Yambajan

Other Attractions Around the Place

Norbulingka—A treasure park
Shigatse
Lantsang River
Mt. Everest
Nyainqentanglha Range
Tsupu Monastery
Namtso Lake
Himalayas
the Karakorum Mountains

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

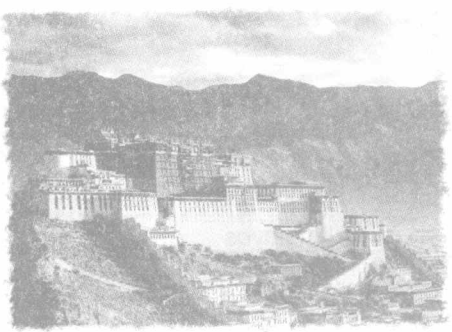
布达拉宫
Potala Palace

自然概况

布达拉宫是一座古老的建筑群，被视为西藏建筑的典范。布达拉宫坐落于西藏拉萨市海拔3 700米的红山上，占地360 000平方米，东西长360米，南北长270米。宫殿共有13层，高117米，其中宫殿、灵塔殿、佛殿、经堂、僧舍、庭院等一应俱全，是当今世界上海拔最高、规模最大的宫殿式建筑群，被誉为“世界屋脊的明珠”。

公元641年，吐蕃王国国王松赞干布和唐朝的文成公主即将大婚，因而为文成公主修建了布达拉宫。但宫殿在随后的一次战争中被烧毁，17世纪由第五世达赖喇嘛重建。此后不断对其进行维修和扩建，直到1645年才达到了如今的规模。在过去的三个世纪里，布达拉宫逐渐成了达赖喇嘛办公和居住的地方，历代达赖喇嘛的遗体都在此保存。

石木结构的布达拉宫分白宫和红宫两个部分。白宫由大厅、庙宇和庭院组成，是达赖喇嘛的居所。红宫内有各式各样的佛堂和八座存放第五世到第十三世达赖喇嘛遗体的佛塔。所有的佛塔都由金箔覆面。第五世达赖喇嘛的佛塔最为华丽。这座塔高14.85米，内嵌珍珠宝石。布达拉宫还藏有大量的雕刻品、壁画、经文和其他珍贵文物。



布达拉宫是藏式建筑的杰出代表，也是中华民族古建筑的精华之作。它同山体融合在一起，高高耸立，壮观巍峨。宫墙红白相间，宫顶金碧辉煌，体现了藏族古建筑迷人的特色。它是西藏人民巨大创造力的象征，也是独一无二的雪域高原上的人类文化遗产。

布达拉宫是中华各民族团结和国家统一的铁证。“布达拉”是梵语音译，又译作“普陀罗”或“普陀”，原指观世音菩萨所居之岛。相传藏传佛教徒认为红山可与观世音的圣地普陀山相媲美，因此把它作为第二个普陀罗。

1994年，布达拉宫被列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

布达拉宫是文物的宝库。300余年来，布达拉宫收藏了2 500余平方米的壁画，近千座佛塔，上万幅唐卡，还有金银器、铜铁器、珐琅器、漆器、竹雕器、骨角象牙器、珠玉宝石、织绣、石刻、印章、货币、典籍、文献资料以及宗教法器供器等几十万件。仅珍贵的梵文贝叶经就有500余卷，还有释迦牟尼的舍利子，另外还有明清以来中央政府关于西藏的各种封与达赖喇嘛的金册、玉册、金印和乾隆皇帝御赐的为挑选达赖转世灵童而设的金奔巴瓶。

主要景点

无字碑
彭措多朗大门
德阳夏
白宫——历代达赖喇嘛的寝宫
红宫——历代达赖喇嘛的灵塔殿和各类佛堂
八廓街
大昭寺
小昭寺
甘丹寺
哲蚌寺
色拉寺
羊八井

周边名胜

宝贝园林——罗布林卡
楚布寺
日喀则
纳木措湖
澜沧江
喜马拉雅山
珠穆朗玛峰(圣母峰)
喀喇昆仑山
念青唐古拉山峰



丽江古城
The Ancient City of Lijiang

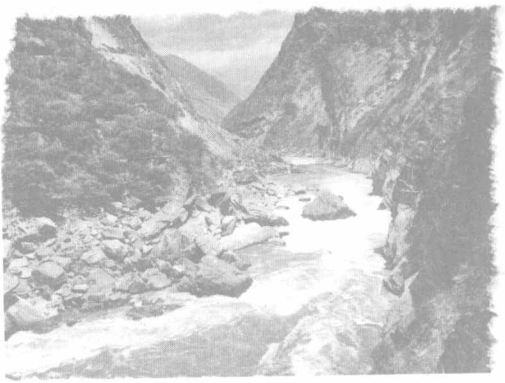
Natural Features

At the foot of Yulong (Jade Dragon) Snow Mountain in northwestern Yunnan Province is the ancient town of Lijiang. In the remote past, it

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

was already inhabited with tribal people. In 1253, Kublai Khan, the Mongol chief, stationed his troops here on his southward march to conquer the State of Dali. For the next 500 years, to the early days of the Qing Dynasty, the place was ruled by a herditary succession of chieftains from the Mu clan of the Naxi people, under the jurisdiction of the imperial court.

Lijiang is a mystical and beautiful town on the center of Lijiang valley, 2 410 meters above sea level, with about 25 000 residents on an area of 3.8 square kilometers. It is the gateway to northwest Yunnan region, and No. 214 National Road runs through the city to Tibet in the north or to Dali City in the south, capital of the autonomous prefecture.



The inhabitants of Lijiang are mainly of Naxi minority, and the city is the only autonomous city of the nationality. It has long been known world wide for its grandiose snow clad mountain, the steep gorge, the elegant Mt. Laojun, the clean Lugu Lake, and the colorful and various customs of the minorities. The outside world is surprised by its ancient and simple sense of "identity of Heaven and Man" and its profound and excellent culture, and amazed by the ancestors of the minorities who built a city without a wall on the beautiful land of Lijiang at this southwest frontier. In December of 1997, World Heritage Committee registered it on World Heritage List, and this "city forgotten by gods" was since unveiled to the world with its oriental mystery and charm like a pearl hidden among the mountains.

Lijiang city is among rivers and mountains. In the northeast are Mt Elephant, Mt Golden Rainbow, and in the northwest is Mt Lion, and the city links them up. The mountains enclose the Lijiang valley in which stands the Lijiang city. The city was named Dayan, because it shapes like an ink stone, and "yan" has the same pronunciation of and can mean "ink stone" in Chinese. The valley surrounds the ancient city with the verdure of crops and vegetation; its lakes are clear and deep in solemn silence; its villages scattered all about are peaceful, quiet, and at ease. Near around the city are over a dozen tourist resorts of the region, the province, or the state, among which Jade Dragon Snow Mountain and Jinsha River are the most

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

glorious.

Classical Naxi music is described as the "living musical fossil" because of its long history. More surprisingly, the Dongba script is the world's only living hieroglyphics still in use. More than 20 000 volumes of ancient books in Dongba writing, rare and valuable documents, are now collected by libraries in China as well as some European and American countries.

Special Mention

The most distinguished features of the buildings in the ancient city are "river aligned" and "mountain oriented". The houses are mostly set by a river, usually parallel to the watercourse and long with roofs of tiles, the front facing the street as shops and the rear hanging over the water like towers.

Apart from waters, the mountain topography is also the orientation. Some houses cling firmly to the rising land and go up, others overhang from high above. They vary in size and placement along the streets, one behind another in layers over layers.

Major Scenic Sites

The big stone bridge in ancient town of Dayan
Folk house along with water
Jade Dragon Snow Mountain
Jade Spring Park (Heilongtan Park)
Lijiang Murals
Little shops by the stream
Lugu Lake
Chieftain Mu's mansion
Murals in Dongba Palace
Naxi ancient music
Spruce Plateau (Yunshan Plateau)
Yufeng Temple
Ceremony for worshipping Wind by Dongba minority
Stone Drum Town
Museum of Dongba Culture
Wangu Town
Jinsha jiang River

Other Attractions Around the Place

Beiyue Temple
Ancient Town of Baisha

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The First Bend of Yangtze River
Tiger Leaping Gorge
Mt. Laojun
Baisha Murals
Three Islands of Lugu

丽江古城
The Ancient City of Lijiang

自然概况

在云南省西北部的玉龙雪山脚下坐落着人间仙境般的丽江古城。这里在远古时期就有部落居民居住生活。1253 年，蒙古族头领忽必烈在进军南方占领大理州的路上曾让他的部队驻扎于此。在随后的 500 年里，直到清朝初期，这个地方都由纳西族氏族酋长世袭统治，统属朝廷管辖。

丽江古城位于丽江坝子中央，海拔 2 410 米，面积 3.8 平方公里，人口约 2.5 万。这里是滇西北的重要门户，如今，214 国道贯穿丽江全市，北可达西藏，南可至大理，交通十分便利。



古城里聚居的居民以纳西族同胞为主，是我国唯一的纳西族自治区。丽江从来就以它巍峨壮丽的大雪山、雄奇险峻的大峡谷、灵秀峻美的老君山、碧波荡漾的泸沽湖和多姿多彩的少数民族风情而闻名于世。人们惊讶于这里“天人合一”的古朴意识及其博大精深的文化内涵，赞叹西南边陲的少数民族先人们，在丽江这片奇丽的土地上筑起了一座没有城墙的古城。1997 年 12 月，联合国教科文组织将丽江古城列入《世界遗产名录》。从此，这个“被神仙遗忘在人间的城郭”，犹如一处藏于大山之中的宝藏被发掘出来，向世人展示东方文明的神秘和魅力。

丽江古城坐拥于群山和河流之中。群山是指东北边的象山、金虹山和西北边的狮子山，古城就处在这三座山的结合部。群山围着丽江坝子，丽江坝子又围着古城。古城原名大研，是因整个丽江坝子形似一块大砚，“砚”与“研”相通。古城四周的丽江坝子有绿海金浪的庄稼以及牧歌清芬的草坪，有明净幽秘的湖水，更有无

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

数淡泊宁静的村庄。紧邻古城周围，就有国家级、省级、地区级的旅游景点十多个，其中最为著名的是玉龙雪山和金沙江。

由于历史悠久，纳西族古典音乐一直被誉为“音乐活化石”。更令人惊奇的是，东巴象形文字是世界上唯一仍在使用的象形文字文字。两万多册古代东巴手书的书稿、稀有珍贵的资料被中国以及欧洲和美洲一些国家的图书馆收藏。

特别提醒

古城里建筑多沿水而筑，随着水势而构成一条与河流并行的瓦屋长廊，临街为铺，临河为楼，前铺后楼。

古城的建筑除了顺水而筑外，还依山而建。沿街建筑因山势起伏而变化，有的房屋附势竞上，有的则是居高临下，顺街而上，房屋错落，层层叠叠。

主要景点

大研古镇的大石桥
古城内依水而筑的民居
玉龙雪山
丽江玉泉公园
东巴宫壁画
泸沽湖
木王府
东巴族祭风仪式
纳西古乐
云杉坪
玉峰寺
石鼓镇
东巴文化博物馆
万古镇
金沙江

周边名胜

长江第一湾
虎跳峡
老君山
白沙壁画
泸沽三岛
束河
白沙古镇
北岳庙

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chapter 4 西北地区 Northwest China

秦始皇陵 Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor

Natural Features

The Mausoleum of the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty (221 BC ~ 206 BC), who successfully defeated all rival ducal states and unified China by establishing the first centralized feudal dynasty, is located at the northern foot of Lishan Hill in Lintong, Shaanxi Province. It is the largest mausoleum ever discovered in the world.



The mausoleum covers a total of 2.18 million square meters, with the tomb itself covering 220 000 square meters. The tomb was designed to be 166 meters high, but years of weathering and damage have reduced this to 76 meters. The bottom of the tomb measures 485 meters by 515 meters.

The mausoleum originally consisted of inner and outer sections. The outer section had a circumference of 6,294 meters. In addition, an underground palace, 450 meters long from south to north and 390 meters wide from east to west and covering more than 180 000 square meters, has been discovered. According to Records of the Historian written over

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

2 000 years ago by Sima Qian, the construction of the grand project involved 700 000 laborers and took 36 years to be completed.

To date, the tomb of the Emperor Qin has not been excavated. But his buried terracotta army unearthed nearby has already stunned the world and has been called the "eighth wonder of the world". They are the largest pottery figurine group ever unearthed in China. So far, three pits containing such figurines have been excavated. They cover a total area of 20 000 square meters. Some 8 000 life-sized warriors demonstrate a powerful military array under the rule of the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty, 2 200 years ago.

Pit One, first discovered in 1974, measures 230 meters long and 62 meters wide, covering over 14 000 square meters. It contains more than 6 000 terracotta warriors, which, with their individual features and facial expressions, line up in battle-readiness, creating an awe-inspiring effect. The pit also buried a large number of chariots, weapons and other precious relics, of which some 10 000 metal weapons were unearthed. An unearthed bronze horse-driven chariot is the largest bronze ware ever found in the world.

Special Mention

The pit is truly an underground military museum largest worldwide. Its design is rational and unique with a weight wall every 3m, dividing the 5m deep pit into lanes of warriors neatly arrayed.



Due to its hugeness and the lack of written data, Chinese archaeologists and historians have worked on the mausoleum for decades. Full scale excavation is left to the future, except some scientific unearthing of a few satellite pits, and visitors to the tomb see only a hill like mound, under which lies the emperor in his meticulous underground palace free of disturbance for over 2 000 years.

Major Scenic Sites

Pit I

Pit II

Pit III

Terra-Cotta Museum

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Other Attractions Around the Place

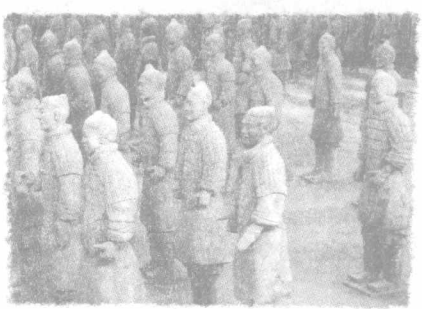
Remains of Great Wall-Qin Dynasty
Bell Tower
Xi'an Ancient Circumvallation
Da Yan Tower (The Big Wild Goose Pagoda)
Xiao yan Tower (The Small Wild Goose Pagoda)
Beilin Museum
Hua Qing Chi
Lishan Scenic Area
Shaanxi History Museum
Banpo Village Remains

秦始皇陵
Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor

自然概况

秦始皇陵是秦朝(公元前221～206)始皇帝的陵墓,位于陕西临潼的骊山北麓,是迄今为止发现的世界上最大的陵墓。秦始皇成功击败所有的诸侯国,统一了中国,建立起了首个中央集权制封建王朝。

秦始皇陵总面积218万平方米,其中陵墓占地220 000平方米。陵墓原设计166米高,但数千年的风雨侵蚀和破坏使陵墓降低为76米。墓底宽485米,长515米。



最初的陵墓包括内外两重城垣。外城周长6 294米。另外,还发现了一座地下宫殿。地下宫殿南北长450米,东西宽390米,占地面积超过180 000平方米。据2000多年前司马迁的《史记》记载,这个庞大的建筑工程是由700 000劳力花了36年才完成的。

到目前为止,秦始皇的陵墓还没有发掘出来。但是,他埋在墓地附近已出土的兵马

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

俑已经使世界大吃一惊了！兵马俑被誉为“世界第八大奇迹”，是中国已经出土的最大的陶俑群。目前已经发掘了3个兵马俑坑，共占地20 000平方米。约8 000个真人大小的士兵展示了2 200年前由秦始皇统领下的强大军事列阵。

一号兵马俑坑是1974年首先发现的。这个兵马俑坑长230米，宽62米，占地14 000多平方米，有6 000多个武士俑。俑的形象各异，千姿百态，按备战列队，创造了令人畏惧的效果。坑里还埋有大量的战车、武器和其他珍贵的文物，其中已出土10 000件金属武器。已出土的青铜马拉战车是迄今世界上发现的最大的青铜器。

特别提醒

秦始皇兵马俑陪葬坑，是世界上最大的地下军事博物馆。俑坑布局合理，结构奇特，在深5米左右的坑底，每隔3米架起一道东西向的承重墙，兵马俑排列在墙间空档的过洞中。

因秦始皇陵规模宏大，历史上遗留下来的有关文字资料较少，我国的考古、历史等多方面的专家，已对它进行了几十年的探查和研究，但目前仍未对秦始皇陵进行大规模的挖掘，仅对陵墓周围的少数陪葬坑进行了科学挖掘。所以，目前人们去看秦始皇陵，只能看一座大山一样的山丘。秦始皇和他精心构造的地下宫殿，2 000多年来一直未受外人的打扰。

主要景点

一号坑　　二号坑
三号坑　　兵马俑博物馆

周边名胜

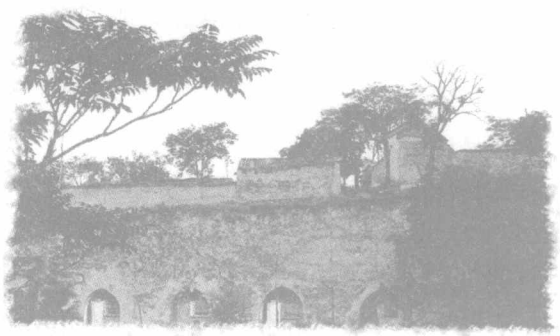
秦长城遗迹　　钟楼
西安古城墙　　大雁塔
小雁塔　　碑林
华清池　　骊山风景名胜区
陕西历史博物馆　　半坡遗址
阿房宫遗址　　化觉巷清真大寺
关中书院　　草堂寺
水陆庵　　香积寺

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

延安
Yan'an

Natural Features

A famous national historical and cultural city, Yan'an is located in the middle beaches of the Yellow River, and north of Shaanxi Province. It is one of the hundreds educational base of patriotism in China, an important base for promoting and inspiring patriotism, revolutionary tradition and Yan'an Spirit education; one of the cradles of Huaxia (an ancient name for China) nationality; also the most important city in northern Shaanxi Province.



Yan'an has a warm and dry climate with frost-free period of 150 ~ 195 days in a year. The annual average temperature is 9.3℃ with a remarkable difference between day and night.

Yan'an is rich in tourist resources with convenient transportation and sufficient facilities. It is especially famous for its Hukou Waterfall on the Yellow River, its local customs and cultures of the loess plateau, as well as its being the Shrine of the Chinese nation and the base of Chinese revolution.

Yan'an once played an important role in Chinese history because it was once the revolutionary center of the CPC. It used to be the headquarter and general rear during the China's War of Liberation (1945 ~ 1949), and it used to be the location of the Central Committee of the Chinese Communist Party. Our great leader Mao Zedong and the Central Committee fought and lived here for 13 years during the Anti-Japanese War and the War of Liberation. Therefore a large number of historic relics and sites are left here, among which the most significant is the spiritual wealth, that is, the Yan'an Spirit. The well-known Date Garden, Yangjialing, Nan-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

niwan and Mt. Fenghuangshan have all recorded the unyielding and exerting spirit of the revolutionary forerunners.

The vast and wild plateau view here is also unique: the Hukou Waterfall in Yichuan County vigorous and powerful with golden water from the Yellow River pours downward into a lofty waterfall which enlivens all hearts once near it; the charming Mt. Wanhuashan with countless wild peonies of red, pink or white attracts people greatly; the typical relief of the loess plateau in Luochuan Yuan shows the magic power of the nature.

What's more, the strong flavour of the real plateau life in Shan Bei is also worth experiencing: the sonorous Xin Tian You, the vibrating drums, the elegant paper-cuts and the plain peasants' paintings, etc..

Special Mention

Because of the higher terrain in Yan'an, the temperature difference between day and night is rather obvious, and the sunshine duration is longer, thus apples, dates and other fruits here are comparatively bigger, sweeter and has more nourishment. Besides, one of the three treasures of Shan Bei—the buckwheat, which is produced right in Yan'an has been regarded as "Foodstuff for Aristocrats".

Major Scenic Sites

Yan'an Pagoda Hill
Qingliangshan Hill
Yangjialing—Site of the former offices of the CCP Central Committee
Date Garden—Site of the former CCP Secretariat
Mt. Wanhuashan
Memorial Hall of Yan'an Revolutionary Activities
Mt. Fenghuangshan
"April 8th" Revolutionary Martyrs' Mausoleum
Wangjiaping—Former revolutionary site

Other Attractions Around the Place

Huangdi Mausoleum Scenic Spot
Memorial Hall of Luochuan Meeting
Site of Wayaobao Meeting
Site of Wujiaping Revolutionary Activities
Hukou Waterfall (Kettle Spout Falls)

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

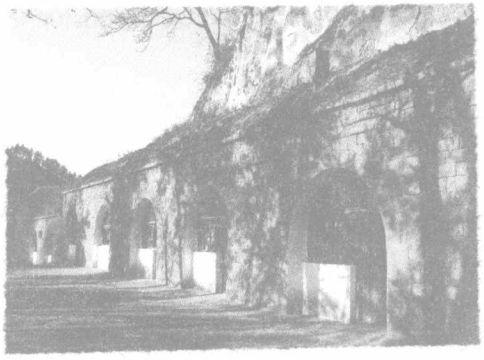
延安
Yan'an

自然概况

延安位于陕西省北部，地处黄河中游，是我国历史文化名城之一，也是中国百家爱国主义教育基地之一，以及全国爱国主义教育、革命传统教育和延安精神教育的三大教育基地。延安是华夏民族的摇篮之一，也是陕西北部的一个重要城市。

延安属于暖温带，每年霜冻以上的天气有 150～195 天。年平均气温 9.3 度，早晚温差较大。

延安旅游资源丰富，交通方便，设施完善。尤以黄河壶口瀑布，黄土风情文化以及中华民族胜地和中国革命圣地而享誉国内外。



延安在近代历史上占有重要地位的主要原因是因为它曾是红色革命中心。在解放战争时期这里是中央机关所在地和全国革命的总后方(1945～1949)。我们的伟大领袖毛泽东以及中共中央曾在延安战斗、生活了 13 个春秋，留下了大批的宝贵文物和纪念地，更为重要的是还留下了珍贵的精神财富——延安精神。著名的枣园、杨家岭、南泥湾、凤凰山麓等许多地方都记载着我国革命的先驱者为了革命而不屈不挠、忘我奋斗的大无畏精神。

延安那旷达的黄土高原风光亦是得天独厚的。宜川县的黄河壶口瀑布，雄浑奔放；金色的黄河水奋勇而下所形成的瀑布顿然使人心生活力；迷人的万花山则拥有千亩野生牡丹，争芳斗艳、姹紫嫣红，甚是美观；洛川塬的典型黄土地貌又凸显了自然的鬼斧神工。

除此之外，延安浓厚的陕北黄土高原风情也颇值得去慢慢体会。一声声洪亮的信天游回响在布满沟壑的黄土地上，荡气回肠；一个个震撼人心的腰鼓舞动在质朴的白夹袄、白头巾的陕北人手中，气势磅礴。更有那漂亮的剪纸，朴素的农民画等等，都让人深深地感受到了浓郁的黄土风情。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

由于延安地势较高，早晚温差大，日照时间长，特别有利于果实积累糖分，所以这里出产的苹果、红枣等物品个个果实饱满，味道醇正、香甜，营养丰富，深受人们喜爱。同时，延安所产的陕北三宝之一的荞麦更是美味，被誉为“贵族食品”，营养十分丰富。

主要景点

延安宝塔山
清凉山旧址
杨家岭——原中共中央机关办公所在地
枣园革命遗址
万花山旧址
延安革命纪念馆
王家坪旧址
“四·八”烈士陵园
凤凰山旧址

周边名胜

黄帝陵旅游区
洛川会议纪念馆
瓦窑堡会议旧址
五家坪革命旧址
黄河壶口瀑布

敦煌莫高窟
Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang City

Natural Features

Located on the eastern slope of Rattling Sand Mountain (Mingshashan) southeast of Dunhuang City in Gansu Province, the Mogao Grottoes (also known as Thousand Buddha Cave) is one of three noted grottoes in China and also the largest, best preserved and richest treasure house of Buddhist art in

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the world.

In AD 366, during the Eastern Jin Dynasty, a monk named Yue Seng chiseled the first cave here. The endeavor continued through later dynasties, including the Northern Wei (386 ~ 534), Western Wei (535 ~ 556), Northern Zhou (557 ~ 581), Sui (581 ~ 618), Tang (618 ~ 907), Five Dynasties (907 ~ 960), Song (960 ~ 1279), Western Xia (1038 ~ 1227) and Yuan (1279 ~ 1368), resulting in the fantastic group of caves that can been seen today.

Today, 492 caves still stand, containing some 2 100 colored statues and 45 000 square meters of murals. These murals, if joined together, would cover a length of 30 kilometers. The caves vary in size. The smallest one just allows a head's space, while the largest one stretches from the foot to the top of the mountain, having a height of over 40 meters. The colored statues also differ in size, ranging from a few centimeters to 33 meters high, embodying the remarkable imagination of their makers.



Despite years of erosion, the murals are still brightly colored, with clear lines. Through pictures of different styles and schools drawn in different historical periods, they tell Buddhist stories and ways as well as life in the secular world. All these, plus a largest quantity of Buddhist sutras and relics kept in the caves have provided valuable material for a study of ancient China's politics, economy, and culture and arts, as well as its science and technology, military affairs, and religion, documenting national history as well as cultural exchanges between China and the world.

In 1987, UNESCO placed the Mogao Grottoes under the protection of the world cultural heritage list.

Special Mention

The architectural art of Mogao Grottoes is mainly noted for the format. The painted statues in Mogao Grottoes are basically themed on Buddhism figures and their pursuit for nirvana. The murals of Mogao Grottoes take up the largest proportion of grotto art creations and the subjects are also the most comprehensive, which is an exclusive feature to Longmen Grottoes and Yungang Grottoes, and unique in the world as well. If put together one after the other, the 45 000m^2 murals of Mogao Grottoes would extend as long as 25km. Western schol-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ars remarked the murals as "a library on the wall".

Major Scenic Sites

Avalookitesvara, on the north in the west wall shrine in Cave 45
The Bodhisattva on the north of the central platform in Cave 196
The truncated pyramid ceiling of Cave 305
Apsaras flying through a tower, on the upper of the north wall in Cave 217
The mural of hunting in Cave 249
The format of "central stupa-pillar" of Cave 228
Buddha'sconverting of 500 outlaws, on the south wall of Cave 285
Head shaving, painted on the north wall in Cave 445
Musicians, painted on the north wall of Cave 220
Cave 17—the "Sutra Cave"
The painted statues in their shrine on the west wall of Cave 328
The only photo of Taoist Wang so far found in the world
Buddha'spreaching, painted on the south wall of Cave 320
Bodhisattva, on the south of the west wall shrine in Cave 420
Ananda, Bodhisattva, Malla, and Kassapa in Cave 45
Portraits of cave donors on the south of the east wall in Cave 61
Big statue of Maitreya in Cave 130

Other Attractions Around the Place

Sanwei Mountain, Well of Avalookitesvara, and ancient graves
Echoing-sand Mountain, Crescent Lake, and Leiyin Temple
Gudong Shore and Shouchang Sea
Yumen Pass of Han Dynasty, minor Square City, and Great Wall of Han Dynasty
Shule River and the major Square City
Dunhuang Museum
Baima (White Horse) Tower
Desent Forest Park

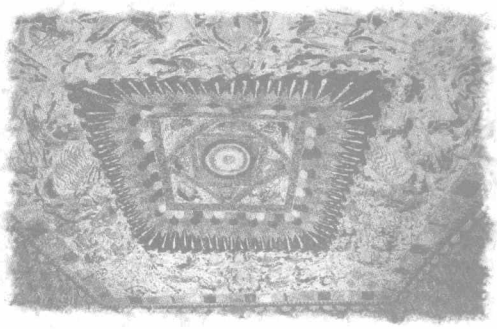
教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

敦煌莫高窟
Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang City

自然概况

莫高窟也称千佛洞，位于甘肃省敦煌市东南鸣沙山的东麓。莫高窟是中国三大名窟之一，也是世界上现存规模最大、保存最完好、内容最丰富的佛教艺术地。

公元366年，在东晋时期，一位名叫乐僔的僧人在这里开凿了第一个洞窟。开凿活动持续了随后的几个王朝，包括北魏（386～534），西魏（535～556），北周（557～581），隋（581～618），唐（618～907），五代（907～960），宋（960～1279），西夏（1038～1227）和元（1279～1368），最终形成了今日所看到的宏伟洞窟群。



莫高窟现存492个洞窟，洞窟内存有2 100尊彩塑和大约45 000平方米壁画。如果把它们全部加在一起，这些壁画的长度超过了30千米。这些洞窟大小各异，最小的只有人头大小，而最大的则从山脚延伸到山顶，高度超过40米。彩塑也大小不同，高度从几厘米到33米不等，充分展示了作者超凡的想象力。

尽管历经一千多年的风雨侵蚀，这些壁画依然色彩鲜艳，线条清晰。不同时期各种风格和教派的壁画向我们讲述了佛教故事以及当年现实世界中人们的一些生活方式。这些壁画连同大量的佛经和佛教遗物一起，为我们研究古代中国的经济、政治、文化、艺术、科学技术、军事、宗教、历史以及中国与外界的文化交往等都提供了大量的宝贵资料。

1987年，联合国教科文组织把莫高窟列入《世界文化遗产名录》。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

特别提醒

莫高窟的建筑艺术主要是指洞窟的形制。莫高窟的彩塑多数反映佛教人物及其修行涅槃事迹的造像。敦煌莫高窟石窟艺术中数量最大、内容最丰富的精髓部分是壁画，这是龙门石窟和云冈石窟所没有的，也是世界上独一无二的。

如果把莫高窟林林总总的4.5万平方米壁画一张张连接起来的话，其长度可达25公里。西方学者将敦煌壁画称作是“墙壁上的图书馆”。

主要景点



第45窟西壁龛内北侧的观音菩萨像
第196窟中心佛坛北侧的菩萨像
第305窟的覆斗式洞窟
第217窟北壁上部的穿楼飞天图（盛唐）
第249窟的狩猎图（西魏）
第228窟的中心塔柱式石窟
第285窟南壁的五百强盗成佛图（西魏）
第445窟北壁的剃度图（盛唐）
第220窟北壁的乐舞图（初唐）
第17窟的藏经洞
第328窟西壁的佛龛彩塑
唯一流传于世的王道士像
第320窟南壁的说法图（盛唐）
第420窟西壁龛内南侧的菩萨像
第45窟内的阿难、菩萨、力士、迦叶像（盛唐）
第61窟东壁南侧的供养人壁画（五代）
第130窟内的石胎泥塑弥勒巨像

周边名胜

三危山、观音井和古墓群
鸣沙山、月牙泉和雷音寺
古董滩、寿昌海
汉玉门关、小方盘城和汉长城
疏勒河和大方盘城
敦煌博物馆
白马塔
沙漠森林公园

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Chapter 5 中南地区 Central and South China

长江三峡 Three Gorges

Natural Features

The Three Gorges have showed the magic workings of nature with their marvelous and beautiful mountains and waters. The grotesque peaks and rocks on the two sides of the Three Gorges are accounting the great changes taking place in the region in the past billion years, and the variegated wracks of lives sleeping deep between the rock layers are narrating the history of the evolvement of lives during the past hundreds of millions of years. How many visitors have been attracted here by the charming thousand-year-long history of the region, the great ancient relics of human civilization, and the mysterious folk tales! Sandwiched between the mountains on the mid part of the Yangtze River, the Three Gorges runs across Fengjie and Wushan Mountain in Sichuan Province and Badong, Zigui, and Yichang in Hubei Province, extending 193 kilometers long to include Qutang Gorge, Wuxia Gorge, and Xiling Gorge. City of White Emperor in Fengjie is the vital passage of the west part of the Three Gorges. Nanjinguan in



教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Yichang is the important gateway of the east part. Along the banks of the Yangtze River, the high peaks rise in emerald verdure, overhanging rocks tower into the clouds, dangerous cliffs seem to reach the sky, rocks are jagged and grotesque, waterfalls are spraying and sparkling, clouds and mists are curling, rapids and torrents are seething, and fierce waves are deep, serene and exquisite.

Currently the Three Gorges region is most famous for the Three Gorges Dam. Thé Three gorges Dam is under construction at a place called Sandouping in the middle of the Xiling Gorge. The dam is not yet complete, but the construction has already cut off the flow of the river, and therefore the water level in the Qutang, Wuxia, and the western portion of the Xiling gorges has already begun to rise. In addition to the impact of the dam on the ecology and people (i. e. the mass relocation of towns and villages) of the region, the dam will also change the scenery of the Three Gorges. Because the water level will be higher, the gorges will be less narrow and the mountains will appear lower. Proponents of the dam point out that because the mountains reach several thousand feet above the river, the gorges are still likely to offer spectacular views of the surrounding cliffs, and it should be noted that most riverboat companies that operate in the three Gorges intend to continue to offer tours of the region. The increase in width of the Gorges will also allow larger ships through the gorges and it is anticipated that river traffic of all kinds will increase.

Special Mention

Qutang Gorge: From east to west, it measures 8 kilometers, starting from Baidicheng and ending at Daixi township. With vertical cliffs of some thousand meters high as its two flanks, the Qutang gorge is only a few dozens of meters wide just like a narrow gateway. With swash and rumble, the surging Yangtze River pours into the gateway with great momentum. Looking up towards the tops of towering precipitous mountains along the Gorge, one sees from a boat only a narrow strip of clouds and sky, but under foot the River tears on violently. Qutang Gorge is outstanding for its grandeur and magnificence.



Wuxia Gorge: It extends 40 kilometers from the mouth of Daning River of Wushan Mountain in the west to Guandukou of Badong in the east. The Wuxia Gorge

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

is gifted with exquisite peaks and lush mountains and ranges. It's deep and serene with changeable weather. The rolling river twists and turns and boats zigzag their way along, as if cruising in a fantastic gallery. The twelve peaks of Wushan Mountain all rise to the blue sky. They are endowed with various fascinating shapes. Among them, the most fabulous is the Peak of Goddess. It pierces through the heaven, and towers over the Yangtze River. A protruding rock of the Peak has the shape of a slim girl shrouded in clouds and mist faintly visible as if clad in fine gauze dress, looking attractive and exuding tenderness and love.

Xiling Gorge: It measures 75 kilometers from Xiangxikou to Nanjinguan. The whole Gorge area is covered with high mountains, gullies, dangerous shoals and hidden reefs of various sizes. The best-known perilous shoal is Qing Shoal. It's formed by collapsed craggy cliffs. Surging waves and rapid currents churn over the shoal embedded with rocks and stones here and there, and then drop two meters in elevation. Ships go downstream over the shoal at an arrow speed, but up the shoal is as difficult as climbing a steep hill.

Major Scenic Sites

Qutang Gorge: Phoenix Fountain
Mengliang Ladders

Wuxia Gorge (12 peaks): Denglong Peak
Shengquan Peak
Chaoyun Peak
Shennu Peak (the Peak of Goddess)
Songluan Peak
Jixian Peak
Feifeng Peak
Cuiping Peak
Juhe Peak
Jingtan Peak
Qiyun Peak
Shangsheng Peak

Xiling Gorge: Bingshu Baojian Gorge (the Gorge of Military Books and Swords)
Niugan Mafei Gorge (the Gorge of Ox livers and Horse lungs)
Huangniu Gorge (the Yellow Ox Gorge)
Dengying Gorge (the Lamp Shadow Gorge)

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Huangling Temple
Sanyou Cave
Qing Shoal

Other Attractions Around the Place

The Three Gorges Dam
The Minor (Mini) Three Gorges: Longmen Gorge
Bawu Gorge
Dicui Gorge
Baidicheng (City of White Emperor in Fengjie)



长江三峡
Three Gorges

自然概况

长江三峡以其奇秀壮丽的山水风景尽显了大自然的神工巧匠。三峡两岸陡峭连绵的山峰,形状怪异的奇石叙述着当地成千上万年之间所发生的巨大变化;岩层中沉睡着的斑驳混杂的生物遗骸诉说着成千上万年当中生命进化的历史。有多少游人被这里千年历史的迷人风光,人类文明的文物古迹以及神秘灵异的故事传说所吸引!倾泻于长江中部、崇山峻岭之间的三峡,流经四川省奉节县的白帝城和巫山,湖北省的巴东、秭归和宜昌,全长 193 公里,沿途包括瞿塘峡,巫峡和西陵峡。奉节的白帝城是三峡西端的重要通道,宜昌的南津关是三峡东部的重要途径。漫漫长江两岸青葱翠绿的山脉山峰矗立,顶上欲坠的悬崖直入云霄,陡峭险要的绝壁跃上天空,岩石千仞怪异,江水汹涌澎湃,云雾缭绕,迅流湍急。

如今,长江三峡最令人关注的地方则是三峡大坝。三峡大坝的位置在西陵峡中部,一个叫三斗坪的地方。工程建设目前还没有全部完成,不过对西陵峡的截流早已顺利完成。因此,现在的瞿塘峡、巫峡和西陵峡西面部分的水位已经开始上涨。三峡大坝除了会给当地的生态和人民生活带来影响外(如大批城镇村落的迁移),还会改变三峡原来如画的风景。由于水位的升高,几个峡谷会显得没有以前那么狭窄,两面的山峰也会显得没有以前那么高大。三峡大坝的支持者们则说,因为两面的山峰高出水面好几千英尺,三峡依然能够给旅游观光者们呈现出周围的悬崖峭壁。而且还要大家注意,即大部分在三峡载客的轮船公司打算继续在这里

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

为游人服务。三峡的宽度增加也会允许较大船只在里面通过，所以，预计各种形式的水上旅行将会有所增加。

特别提醒

长江三峡——瞿塘峡



瞿塘峡，西起奉节白帝城，东至巫山黛溪，峡长 8 公里。南北两岸峭壁千仞，如刀砍斧削一般，江流汹涌于宽仅百余米的狭窄江道之中。长江水迅流湍急，具有排山倒海之势。船过其间，举头仰望，云天一线；环绕四周，江水奔腾。瞿塘峡以其雄伟壮丽而闻名于世。

长江三峡——巫峡

巫峡西起巫山县大宁河口，东至巴东县官渡口，峡长 40 公里。巫峡以其秀美迷人的山峰和万木葱茏的山脉而著名。大山深不可测，安详静谧却气候多变。奔腾的河水和船渡呈之字形前行，犹如在一个荒诞怪异的长廊中漫游。巫山的 12 座山峰亭亭玉立，直插蓝天。神采各异，风姿有别，其中最富魅力的是神女峰。它高入云霄，俯视长江，山峰上一块突出的岩石犹如一个天上的仙女，在云雾缭绕下忽隐忽现，其身影美妙迷人，散发着温柔和爱意。

长江三峡——西陵峡

西陵峡在湖北秭归、宜昌两县境内。东起香溪口，西至南津关，长达 75 公里。整个峡区由高山峡谷和险滩礁石组成。最为著名的险滩是青滩，它由坍塌的多岩层峭壁形成。急流猛浪在到处是岩石的险滩上咆哮狂舞一番，随之又猛的下降两米缓流片刻。经过险滩的船只箭一般地飞泻而下，然而若想上游险滩却犹如攀登陡峭的山峰一样十分困难。

主要景点

瞿塘峡——凤凰饮泉　　孟良梯
铁锁关　　偷水孔
粉壁石刻　　倒吊和尚
风箱峡　　七道门
古栈道

巫峡——(十二峰)登龙峰　　圣泉峰
朝云峰　　神女峰(望霞峰)
松峦峰(帽盒峰)　　集仙峰(剪刀峰)

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

飞凤峰　翠屏峰
聚鹤峰　净坛峰
起云峰　上升峰
西陵峡——兵书宝剑峡　牛肝马肺峡
黄牛峡　灯影峡
青滩　池滩
崆岭滩　腰叉河

周边名胜

三峡大坝
小三峡——龙门峡，铁棺峡，滴翠峡
奉节白帝城
石宝寨
大昌古镇
云阳张飞庙
香溪



桂林山水
Guilin Scenery

Natural Features

As a center for tourism, Guilin boasts magnificent natural beauty and many precious cultural relics. The colorful ethnic background lends a touch of mystery that enhances its fame.

Lijiang River symbolizes the area, as this picturesque river is a major component of Guilin scenery and is publicly recognized as the first-class tourist resort in the world. As it sparkles in the sunlight the river meanders through lush mountains like a liquid jade belt. To really appreciate the scenery a cruise from Guilin to Yangshuo is a must and your voyage of discovery can be divided roughly into three sections.

The first of these is from downtown Guilin where you board the cruiser to Huangniu Xia (valley). As soon as you leave the landing stage you will begin to

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

enjoy the natural wonder and local customs.

Upon reaching Huangniu Xia (valley), the cruiser enters upon the second section. This part is the very essence of Lijiang River. The gorgeous mountains and the crystal water together with the romantic legends are certain to impress you.

Shuiluo Village marks the beginning of the third and final section that ends at Yangshuo. Along this stretch of the river you pass through pastoral scenes unchanged for generations as the banks are lined with quaint fishing villages, farmland and bamboo groves. Here you will see water buffalo, ducks swimming in line and the small boats used by fishermen when they ply the river with cormorants to catch fish from its abundant stocks. This quiet rural beauty, a stunning contrast to the hustle and bustle of the modern city streets, is a joy to behold.

There are havens of peace within the city such as Diecai Hill (Folded Brocade Hill), also named Gui Hill. This hill is easy to climb, making it popular with visitors. While stepping into the Nayun Pavilion on Mingyue Peak, you will be rewarded with a panoramic view of the whole city.



There are more than 30 noted scenic spots within the boundaries of Guilin Peak. Among them are a hill standing in solitary loftiness in the center of the city: the Elephant Trunk Hill, the city's symbol, so named because of its resemblance to an elephant's sipping water from the Lijiang River with its trunk.

The city also boasts other beautiful hills, such as the Fubo Hill, which is supposed to restrain the waters of the Lijiang River, and Nanxi Hill that stands magnificently like a huge screen.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Special Mention

It is said that a city without water is without nimbus. Guilin is richly endowed with two Rivers and four Lakes, little wonder that it is such an attractive city. The two rivers are Lijiang River and Taohua (Peach Blossom) River while the four lakes are namely, Mulong (Wooden Dragon) Lake, Gui (Sweet Scented Osmanthus) Lake, Rong (Banyan) Lake and Shan (Fir) Lake. Flowers, grasses, themed gardens, bridges, pavilions, towers and halls have been set skillfully to enhance and compliment the natural scenery. If water is the eye of a city then bridge must be eyebrow. There are 19 bridges connecting the two Rivers and Four Lakes. These 19 bridges are styled after famous bridges at home and abroad, like Zhaozhou Bridge, Alexander Bridge over the Seine in Paris, etc..

Major Scenic Sites

Elephant Trunk Hill
Fubo Hill
Diecai Hill
Guilin Seven Star Park
Solitary Beauty Peak
Reed Flute Cave (Lu Di Yan)
Scenic Area of two Rivers and four Lakes:
Lijiang River
Taohua (Peach Blossom) River
Mulong (Wooden Dragon) Lake
Gui (Sweet Scented Osmanthus) Lake
Rong (Banyan) Lake
Shan (Fir) Lake

Other Attractions Around the Place

Yangshuo
Former Residence of Xu Beihong
Ancient Town of Dawei
Former Residence of Li Zongren
Tombs of Prince Jingjiang
Zijiang Piaoliu
Waterfall in Baoding

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

桂林山水
Guilin Scenery

自然概况

作为一个旅游的中心城市，桂林以其迷人的自然风景和大量珍贵的文化古迹而享有盛誉。其多姿多彩的民族特色更是为其增添了神秘的色彩。



漓江是桂林山水风景区的象征。这条如诗如画的玉带是桂林山水的一个主要组成部分，是举世公认的旅游胜地。在阳光下闪烁着耀眼光芒的漓江水犹如一条玉带蜿蜒穿入绿木葱茏的山间。人们到桂林游漓江，主要是从桂林乘船顺流而下至阳朔这段83公里的水路。沿途风光大致可以分为三大部分：

第一部分是从桂林市区登上开往黄牛峡（山谷）的旅游船。船一离岸，你就能开始感受到周围自然奇观和当地民族风情的妙不可言。到达黄牛峡（山谷）时，游船即带你进入了观光的第二个部分。这个部分可是漓江风光的真正精华：平地拔起、千姿百态的山；蜿蜒曲折、明洁如镜的水；以及美丽动听的故事传说无疑会深深地打动人们的心灵。

到了水螺村，即标志着人们进入观光的第三部分，这一部分一直持续到整个水程的终点阳朔。在这一段水面上，人们将经过百余年未曾有过改变的田园诗般的美丽景地：两岸一个个古老而别致的渔村，一片片风景画般的农田和一片片郁郁葱葱的竹林。在这里，人们还能看到成群的水牛，游成一线的水鸭以及渔民们带着鸬鹚在水中捕鱼时所用的小船。这种宁静的乡村美景与人群涌动、喧嚣鼎沸的城市街道相比竟是那么地不同，令人身心愉悦，流连忘返！

桂林市内也有闹中取静的地方，如叠彩山，又名桂山。此山平缓易爬，深受游人喜爱。当人们踏入明月峰上的拿云亭时，可以饱览整个城市的美丽风貌。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

桂林山峰区域内有30多处著名风景点，其中有一座独立于市区中心的雄伟峻秀的象鼻山。这座山是城市的象征，其名字来源于其形状酷似大象，弯弯长长的鼻子不停地呷吸着漓江的水。

城市里还有许多其他美丽的山峰，如伏波山，据说是可以降伏漓江波涛的山；还有南溪山，宛如一道壮观的巨型屏风矗立在那里。

特别提醒

人们都说，一座没有水的城市就是没有灵气的城市。桂林却幸运地拥有两江四湖，难怪它是一座如此有魅力的城市。桂林的两江是漓江和桃花江，四湖则是木龙湖，桂湖，榕湖和衫湖。这里鲜花似锦，绿草茵茵；主题公园，小桥亭阁，塔楼厅院，为美丽的自然风光又大大地增了色添了彩。假如说水是城市的眼睛，那么小桥定是它的眉毛。桂林的两江四湖由19座桥梁而连成一气。这19座桥梁集国内外桥梁建筑之精华（如中国古代的赵洲桥，巴黎塞纳河上的亚历山大桥等等），风采各异。

主要景点

象鼻山
伏波山
叠彩山
桂林七星公园
独秀峰
芦笛岩
两江四湖景区：漓江，桃花江
木龙湖，桂湖，榕湖，杉湖

周边名胜

阳朔
徐悲鸿故居
李宗仁故居
大圩古镇
七星坡古墓
靖江王陵
资江漂流
宝鼎瀑布

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

嵩山——少林寺
Songshan Mountain and Shaolin Temple



Natural Features

Located in Dengfeng City of Henan Province, Songshan Mountain is one of the five most famous and sacred mountains (known as Wuyue) and is called "Zhongyue" (the Central Mountain). It has 36 peaks and stretches 60 kilometers, composed of Taishi Mountain and Shaoshi Mountain. The highest peak is 1 494 meters above sea level.

There exists a total of 10 monasteries, 5 temples, 5 palaces, 3 Taoist temples, 4 nunneries, 4 caves, 3 altars and more than 270 pagodas and is the holy land gathering three major religions: Buddhism, Confucianism and Taoism. The world-famous Shaolin Temple lies hidden just in Songshan Mountain. These plentiful scenes and sights of cultural interest and rare and precious geological heritages mingle and add radiance and beauty to each other, forming the solid, multi-level, multi-functional and enchanting landscape of the Songshan Geopark.

Songshan Geopark covering 450km^2 is situated in Dengfeng City, Henan Province. Its main types of geological heritages are geological (structural) sections, and the main landscapes include peculiar erosional structures and limestone karst

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

landscapes.

Songshan Mountain is geotectonically located in the southern part of the North China ancient land. Within it successive and complete Archean (3.5 billion years ago), Proterozoic, Paleozoic, Mesozoic and Cenozoic stratigraphic sections are exposed with clear stratigraphic sequence and typical structural features, and are called "Five Eras Gathering" by the geological circles. In fact, here is a complete "rock" book recording the evolution history of the Earth.

Because of the mountains and peaks such as Yuzhaishan, Junjifeng, Wuzhiling and Jianshan are mainly formed by quartzite and built up by tectonic movements, they all tower aloft above 400m elevation. Steep and graceful precipices and cliffs and wonderful valleys are widespread in the area, forming unique landforms and landscapes.

People of 8 nationalities including Han, Hui, Pumi, Bai, Yi, Miao, Uygur and Mongolian live in the geopark, forming a big family of multiple nationalities. During each festival of the ethnic minorities, the local government and Han people attend the celebration to fully show and enjoy the folk custom and folkways.

The mountain also boasts a large number of showplaces and cultural relics. In the famous Shaolin Temple, Shaolin monks are exercising Qigong and other Shaolin Kung-fu (martial arts). There are also some other temples in the mountain, such as the Zhongyue Temple, which is nicknamed "the Little Palace"; the Fawang Temple and the Huishan Temple, the oldest temples extant in China; two earliest and well-preserved astronomical observatories extant in China, etc..

Songshan abounds in stele carvings, totaling more than 2 000 pieces, left by famous calligraphers like Yan Zhenqing, Su Dongpo, Huang Tingjian and Mi Fu, etc..

Special Mention

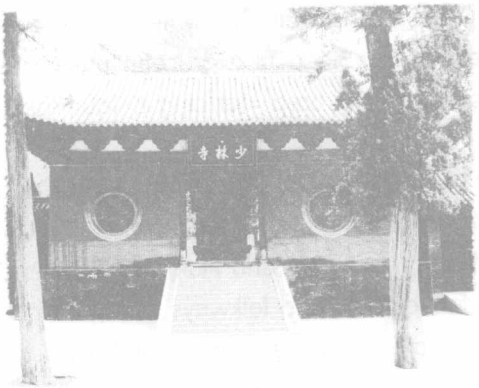
Located in the Songshan Mountains, roughly about 100 kilometers southwest of Henan's provincial capital, Zhengzhou, Shaolin Temple is famous not only as one of China's important Buddhist shrines, but also as the ancient center of Chinese Kung-fu.

Built in 495, the temple was originally designed to house Batuo, a celebrated Indian monk who, after many years of spreading Buddhism, was later known as Fo Tuo, or Grand Monk. In 537, another famous Indian monk, Boddhidharma, settled in the temple, and as legend has it, created a sort of primitive bare-hand combat routine called "xingyi boxing" after he had sat meditating in a cave for nine

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

years.

That started the kung-fu tradition at the temple. At the beginning of the 7th century, a tiny army of 13 Shaolin monks were reputed to have saved future Tang Dynasty emperor Li Shimin, by defeating an entire division of the ruling Sui Dynasty's army and helping him break out of prison. When he took power, Li showered favors, land and wealth on the temple. Shaolin then thrived as a center of Kung-fu masters from around the country and is reputed also to be "the Number One Temple under Heaven". At its heyday, it housed more than 3 000 soldier-monks.



Always a center of rebellion, Shaolin was badly damaged by fire three times, most seriously in 1938, when a blaze raged for more than 40 days, destroying nearly all the temple's classical literature and records.

The present buildings at Shaolin Temple are spread out over an area of about 10 000 acres. The most interesting relics are the murals in the Eastern Hall, which depict groups of boxing monks.

When you first get to the Shanmen Hall, you can see hung on its top is a tablet reading "Shaolin Temple". The tablet was inscribed by the Emperor Kangxi (1622 ~ 1723) during the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911).

What's more, the Pagoda Forest in Shaolin Temple which consists of about 250 tombs is the largest of China's pagoda complexes.

Major Scenic Sites

Shaolin Temple Scenic Area: Shaolin Temple
Shanmen Hall
Hall of Heavenly Kings
Mahavira Hall
The Pagoda Forest

Songyang Academy Scenic Area: Songyang Academy

Taishi Mountain Scenic Area

Fawang Temple Scenic Area: Fawang Temple

Zhongyue Temple Scenic Area: Zhongyue Temple

Luya Waterfall Scenic Area

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Astronomical Observatory Scenic Area
Shaoshi Mountain Scenic Area

Other Attractions Around the Place

Yellow River scenic area
Birthplace of Huang Di
Huang Di's Palace
Yuntai Mountain scenic area
Shiren (stone man) Mountain scenic area



嵩山——少林寺
Songshan Mountain and Shaolin Temple

自然概况

位于河南省登封市的嵩山是举世闻名的中华五岳(山东的泰山,陕西的华山,山西的恒山,湖南的衡山)之一,被称为中岳。嵩山风景区有36座山峰,绵延60公里,主要由太室山和少室山两座大山组成,最高的山峰海拔1 494米。

嵩山风景区人文景观众多,计有十寺,五庙,五宫,三观,四庵,四洞,三坛及宝塔270余座,是历史上佛、儒、道三教荟萃之地。闻名于世的少林寺便深藏于嵩山的怀抱。这些丰富的人文景观和珍稀的地质遗迹相互辉映,构成了嵩山地质公园立体的、多层次的、多功能的迷人景观。

嵩山世界地质公园位于河南省登封市,总面积450平方公里,主要地质遗迹类型为地质(含构造)的组成部分,主要的地质风景包括独特的风化腐蚀后的结构以及石灰岩喀斯特的景观。

嵩山在大地构造上处于华北古陆南缘。在公园范围内,连续完整地出露35亿年以来太古代、元古代、生代和新生代五个地质历史时期的地层,地层层序清楚,构造形迹典型,被地质界称为"五代同堂",是一部完整的地球历史石头书。

嵩山主峰地区的玉寨山、峻极峰、五指岭、尖山等,多为石英岩组成,加之构造运动所致,使诸峰向上拔地而起,立壁千仞,险峻清秀,奇峰异谷遍布全区,形成独特的地形和地貌。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

公园区内居住有汉、回、普米、白、彝、苗、维吾尔、蒙古八个民族，形成了多民族的大家庭。在各少数民族节庆之日，地方政府与汉族同胞与之共同庆贺，充分展示其民习，民俗，民风等民族文化，享受少数民族的习俗乐趣。

风景区内还有许多名胜景点和历史文物。在享誉中外的少林寺里，少林和尚苦练气功和少林功夫（武术）。除少林寺外，这里还有不少其他寺庙，如中岳庙，别称“小宫殿”；法王寺和慧山寺，两座中国现存最古老的寺庙；以及两座中国现存最古老，保存最完好的天文台（观星台）等等。

嵩山还有大量的碑文石刻，共计2 000余处，由著名书法家颜真卿、苏东坡、黄庭坚和米芾等等。

特别提醒

举世闻名的少林寺坐落在距河南省会郑州西南100公里处的嵩山西麓，它不仅仅是中国的一个重要佛教圣地，也是古代中国功夫的训练中心。

少林寺创建于北魏太和十九年（495），是北魏孝文帝元洪为安顿印度高僧跋陀落迹传教而建造的。公元537年，又有一位名叫菩提达摩的印度僧人来到这里，据说他在跋陀开创的基础上又创建了一套简单的徒手格斗规则称作“形异拳”。他曾在少林寺后五乳峰上的石洞里终日面壁达九年之久。

这就是少林功夫的最早由来。7世纪初，一支由13个少林和尚组成的小部队因打败了当时隋朝的整支军队并从牢狱中救出了后来的唐朝皇帝李世民而名声大振。李即位后，对少林寺大加封赏，赐田地千顷，水碾一具，参战僧人也各有封赏。少林寺从此名扬天下，被誉为“天下第一名刹”，也成为全国的功夫大师训练中心。在鼎盛时期，这里曾驻扎着3 000多僧兵。

由于少林寺一直是反叛人士或行为的活动中心，它曾三次遭到大火的焚烧，其中最严重的一次是1938年，一场大火烧了40多天，烧毁了寺庙中几乎全部的经典文献和记载文字。

如今的少林寺内亭阁殿堂林立，占地约4047公顷。最有意思的历史文物为东厅里的壁画，描绘着一组组苦练功夫的和尚。

来到少林寺的山门前，你看到山门门额上悬挂着“少林寺”匾额，这是清朝康熙皇帝御笔亲书的。此外，少林寺以西山脚下的一片塔林是唐朝以来少林寺历代住持僧的葬地，约250余座，是我国最大的塔林群。

主要景点

少林寺景区：少林寺，山门，天王殿，大雄殿，塔林
嵩阳书院景区：嵩阳书院
太室山景区
法王寺景区：法王寺
中岳庙景区：中岳庙

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

卢崖瀑布景区
观星台景区
少室山景区

周边名胜

黄河游览区
黄帝故里
黄帝宫
云台山风景名胜区
石人山风景区

武陵源
Wulingyuan Scenic Area

Natural Features



Located in northwestern Hunan Province, the Wulingyuan Scenic Area consists of three parts: Zhangjiajie National Park, Suoxiyu Nature Reserve and Tianzi Mountain Natural Reserve, covering a total area of 350 square kilometers.

The scenic area is distinguished for the quartzite sandstone peaks rare in the world, and well known for its five wonders of spectacular peaks, grotesque rocks, secluded ravines, graceful waters, and Karst caves. In addition, there are also dense forests, diversified streams and brooks, capricious mists, and plain pastoral landscape, to form the enchanting multi-dimensional scenery.

Wulingyuan is also a treasure house of plants and animals. The vertical distri-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

bution of the plants is distinctive with intact flora and balanced ecological system preserving a great number of rare plants and the botanic resources only found in China. The vegetation coverage is 88% , with over 3 000 species of higher plants, including woody plants in 107 families, 250 genus, and more than 700 species, and 35 species are inscribed in the Protective List of Rare and Endangered Plant Species in China as the first group under key protection. As for the fauna in the area, there are 116 species of land vertebrates in 50 families, of which 3 species are under Class I state protection, 10 under Class II state protection, and 17 under Class III state protection.

There are also streams, brooks, springs, lakes and waterfalls here in the area.

In 1988, the State Council recognized Wulingyuan as a national key scenic area, approved the establishment of Zhangjiajie City and the People's Government of Wulingyuan District, as a means to safeguard the administration and protection of the scenic area.

The Wulingyuan Scenic Area was listed as a world natural heritage in December 1992, and in February2004, Zhangjiajie National Geopark was approved by UNESCO as a site of the World Geological Parks on its list of World Network of Geoparks.

Special Mention

The most characteristic of Wulingyuan is the pillars and peaks. Altogether there are 3 103 peaks about 500 ~ 1 100m above sea level, with the height ranging from scores to hundreds of meters, in shapes of a man, an immortal, a bird, an animal, or a certain object.

The limestone caves are mainly on the north bank of Suoxi Valley and eastern Emperor Mountain. There are dozens of them, while the most brilliant is Yellow Dragon Cave, honored as the "Treasure House of Speleology".

The sand veins in the Devon stratum of Echoing Wall and the wavy traces on the rocks by Jumping Fish Pond are precious geological remains, and they are the rare evidences in the study of ancient environment and geological transformation, in addition to their aesthetic value. The coral fossils found in the Permian stratum at Emperor Mountain have vein patterns like that of a turtle, thus called "turtle vein stone", which are qualified material for various handicraft carvings.

Major Scenic Sites

Zhangjiajie National Forest Park

Yellow Lion Village line: Guest Welcoming Arhat

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Treasure Box of Celestial Books
Magic Sea Needle
South Heaven Pillar
Star Picking Stand
Deserted Piers of Heaven Bridge
Fir Forest Path
South Heaven Gate
Natural Murals
Six Wonders Pavilion
Heicongnao Peak Terrace
Golden Turtle Peak
West Heaven Gate
Dragon Head Peak
Conch Peak
Lover Spring
Pure Breeze Pavilion
Couple Peaks
Three Sister Peaks
Lover Watching Peak
Nine Layers of Fairy Palaces

Golden Whip Stream line: Peaks of Mother and Child
Golden Whip Peak
Hawk Guarding the Whip
Drunken Arhat
Pilgrims to the West
Cleaving the Mountain to Save the Holy Mother
Waters around Four Gates

Kidney Village line: Natural Bridge
Eagle's Beak
Rabbit Watching the Moon

Fir Sword Gully line: Hollow Pond
Pond Reflection of Leaning Pagoda
Birthday Courtesy of Five Daughters
Minor Heaven Gate
Birds Paradise

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Silver Ribbon Pendent from Heaven

Yuanjiajie area: No. 1 Bridge under Heaven
Enchanting Stand
Rear Garden
King Vine
Five Colors Flower
Corridor in Air

Suoxi Valley scenic area

Miles Long Gallery: Tiger Roaring at the Sky
Golden Mouse Gazing at the Sky
Camel Peaks
Yellow Dragon Cave: 1 reservoir, 2 rivers, 3 waterfalls, 4 ponds, 13 halls, 96 corridors
Shentang (Divine House) Bend
Thousand Feet Gorge
West Sea
Baofeng Lake

Emperor Mountain Natural Reserve

Skyscraping Peak
General Rock
Yellow Dragon Spring
Heaven Pond
Perching Phoenix Mountain
Master in Poem Composing
Emperor's Well
Lovers Waterfall
Farmland in the Air
Heaven Warrior's Gathering
Tongue Rock
One Step Too Hard
Joined Couple Cave
Immortals Bridge
Imperial Writing Brushes

Park of Marshal He Long

Yangjiajie scenic area

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Other Attractions Around the Place

Mengdong River scenic area
Maoyan River attractions
Tianmen Mountain National Forest Park
Lotus Flower Town—Furong Town
Laosi Town
Ancient Town of Liye

武陵源
Wulingyuan Scenic Area

自然概况

位于湖南省西北部的武陵源风景区由三个部分组成:张家界国家公园、索溪峪自然保护区和天子山自然保护区。整个风景区占地 350 平方公里。

武陵源风景名胜区独特的石英砂岩峰林为国内外所罕见,以“奇峰、怪石、幽谷、秀水、溶洞”五绝闻名于世。景区内还有茂密的森林、多姿的溪涧、变幻的烟云、淳朴的田园风光,构成了一幅迷人的立体画卷。



武陵源还是个生物宝库。区内植物垂直带谱明显,群落结构完整,生态系统平衡,蕴藏着众多古老珍贵的植物和中国特有植物资源,森林覆盖率达 88%。高等植物有 3 000 余种,其中木本植物有 107 科、250 属、700 余种,首批列入《中国珍稀濒危保护植物名录》的重点保护植物有 35 种。陆生脊椎动物有 50 科、116 种,属国家一级保护动物的有三种、国家二级保护动物的有 10 种、国家三级保护动物的有 17 种。

除此之外,这里还有许多小溪、河流、泉水、湖泊和瀑布为景区增色。

1988 年,国务院审定武陵源为国家重点风景名胜区,并批准设立省辖张家界

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

市，建立武陵源区人民政府，以加强风景名胜区的保护和管理。

1992 年 12 月，武陵源被联合国教科文组织作为自然遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。2004 年 2 月，湖南张家界地质公园被联合国教科文组织世界地质公园专家评审会列入世界地质公园名录。

特别提醒

武陵源最有特色的当属它的山。武陵源共有石峰 3 103 座，峰体分布在海拔 500 至 1 100 米之间，高度由几十米至几百米不等，造型若人、若神、若仙、若禽、若兽、若物，真可谓变化万千。

武陵源的溶洞主要集中于索溪峪河谷北侧及天子山东南部，总数达数十个。其中以黄龙洞最为典型，被称为“洞穴学研究的宝库”。

武陵源回音壁上的泥盆系地层中砂纹和跳鱼潭边的岩画波浪，是不可多得的地质遗迹，是研究古环境和海陆变迁的证据，同时还具有极高的观赏价值。分布在天子山二叠系地层中的珊瑚化石，形如龟背花纹，故称“龟纹石”，是雕塑各种工艺品的上好材料。

主要景点

张家界森林公园

黄石寨风景线：	罗汉迎宾	天书宝匣	定海神针
	南天一柱	摘星台	天桥遗墩
	杉林幽径	南天门	天然壁画
	六奇阁	黑枞垴	金龟岩
	西天门	龙头峰	海螺峰
	鸳鸯泉	清风亭	夫妻岩
	三姊妹峰	望郎峰	九重仙阁
金鞭溪风景线：	母子峰	金鞭岩	神鹰护鞭
	醉罗汉	西天取经	劈山救母
	水绕四门		
腰子寨风景线：	天桥	老鹰嘴	兔儿望月
杉刀沟风景线：	空心潭	石塔斜影	五女拜寿
	小天门	百鸟乐园	天悬白练
袁家界风景线：	天下第一桥	迷魂台	后花园
	藤王	五色花	空中走廊

索溪峪风景区

十里画廊：猛虎啸天，锦鼠观天，骆驼峰

黄龙洞：一库、二河、三瀑、四潭、十三厅、九十六廊

神堂湾

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

百丈峡
西海
宝峰湖
天子山自然保护区：摩天峰　将军岩　黄龙泉
天池　凤栖山　屈子行吟
天子井　鸳鸯瀑布　空中田园
神兵聚会　舌子岩　一步难行
双合洞　仙人桥　御笔峰
贺龙公园
杨家界风景区

周边名胜

猛洞河风景区
茅岩河风光
天门山国家森林公园
芙蓉镇
老司城
里耶古城遗址

龙门石窟
Longman Grottoes in Luoyang City

Natural Features

Longmen Grottoes is located at the foot of Yique Mountain 12km south of Luoyang City proper, where Yi River traverses northward between two mountain peaks which are just like a pair of Chinese gate towers. Indeed, Yique, the name of the mountain, actually means "gate of Yi River" in Chinese, and Emperor Yang of Sui Dynasty, when enjoying the beauty here, exclaimed with admiration, "Isn't this the Dragon Gate!" and that is the origin of the name: Longmen, the "dragon gate" in Chinese.

The rocks of the mountain are hard and tough, quite ideal for stone sculpture,

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

and Longmen Grottoes are the third cluster of cave temples commissioned by the imperial court, after Dunhuang Grottoes in Gansu and Yungang Grottoes in Datong of Shanxi. The carving began in North Wei dynasty, and went on through East and West Wei Dynasties, then the dynasties of North Qi, North Zhou, Sui, Tang, and the Five Dynasties Period, lasting for over 400 years. During this long period, the full scale and efficient carvings account to about 150 years.

Preserved in the grottoes are over 2 100 cave shrines sheltering 97 300 statues or more, as well as over 3 600 epigraphs or steles and 40 Buddhist stupas or pagodas.



Longmen Grottoes is truly a large museum of stone sculpture. Both an artistic expression of Buddhist culture and a reflection of the politics, economy, and social culture of the time, the caves have preserved for today a huge wealth of physical data of religion, fine art, architecture, calligraphy, music, costume, and medicine.

The landscape, mountain, and river of Longmen are grandiose and pretty, delightfully scenic as the first of the eight beauties of Luoyang. Bai Ju-yi, the celebrated poet of Tang Dynasty, wrote that "The landscape around Luoyang is wonderful, and Longmen is the best", which is still true for the present. Its ancient art, its splendid environment, and its convenient transportation, all attract groups of scholars and visitors from home and abroad.

In 1961, Longmen Grottoes were brought under the state protection as a key cultural site, and in November of 2000 the World Heritage Committee of UNESCO inscribed the site in its World Heritage List.

Special Mention

The three most well famed Buddhist grottoes in China are those in Dunhuang, Yungang, and Longmen. Yet Longmen Grottoes in the interior of China tops the other two with regard of the geological position and the historical significance.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Major Scenic Sites

Guyang Cave
The Three Binyang Caves
Lotus Flower Cave
Medical Formulas Cave
Qianxi Temple
Sutra Reading Temple
Cave of Ten Thousand Buddha
Fengxian Temple
Dawanwu Buddha Cave

Other Attractions Around the Place

White Horse Temple
Guan's Temple
Museum of Ancient Tombs
Bai's Garden
Baiyun (White Cloud) Mountain
Cockscomb Cave
Site of Er-Li-Tou
Ancient Town of Wei in Han Dynasty

龙门石窟
Longman Grottoes in Luoyang City

自然概况

龙门石窟位于洛阳市南郊12公里处的伊阙山下。当年隋炀帝在此游玩时，望着整齐的伊阙山口，脱口说出“此乃龙门耶”，故被称之为龙门。这里两山对峙，伊水中流，山上石质坚硬，适合雕刻。

龙门石窟的开凿是继甘肃的敦煌石窟、山西大同的云冈石窟之后由皇室开凿的又一个大型石窟寺群。它于北魏太和年间开始营建，历经东西魏、北齐、北周、隋唐、五代，前后有计划的开凿长达400多年，其中大规模、有效率的营建约计150年

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

左右。

龙门石窟现保存下来有窟龛2 100多个、造像9.73万尊、题记和碑碣3 600余品、佛塔近40座。龙门石窟堪称一座大型石刻艺术博物馆。它不仅是佛教文化的艺术表现，同时也折射出当时的政治、经济和社会文化。石窟中至今仍然保留着大量的宗教、美术、建筑、书法、音乐、服饰、医药等方面的实物史料。



龙门山河壮丽，风景宜人，自古即为洛阳八景之冠。唐代大诗人白居易有“洛都四郊山水之胜，龙门首焉”的佳句，今诵尤新。这里古老的艺术、优美的环境、方便的交通，吸引了众多的国内外学者和游人。

1961年，龙门石窟被列为国家重点文物保护单位。2000年11月，龙门石窟被联合国教科文组织作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

中国古代的佛教石窟最著名的要数敦煌、云冈、龙门这三大石窟。然而，若论地理位置和历史意义的重要性，中原的龙门石窟当首屈一指。

主要景点

古阳洞　　宾阳三洞
莲花洞　　药方洞
潜溪寺　　看经寺
万佛洞　　奉先寺
大万伍佛洞

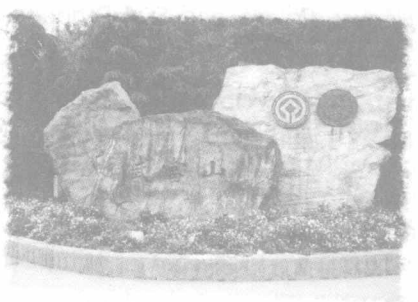
周边名胜

白马寺　　关林
古墓博物馆　　白园
白云山　　鸡冠洞
二里头遗址　　汉魏故城
风穴寺　　汉光武陵

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

武当山
Wudang Mountain

Natural Features



Wudang Mountain, also called Taihe Mountain, is a well-known sacred mountain to Taoists in China. It stands aloft in Danjiangkou, Shiyan City, Hubei Province, overlooking the vast water of Danjiangkou Reservoir in the front, and joining Shennongjia Forest Reserve at the back, covering an area of about 400 square kilometers. The highest peak is the Heavenly Pillar Peak, rises 1 612 meters above the sea level. Around it there are altogether 72 peaks, 24 streams, 11 caverns, 3 ponds, 9 springs, 10 pools, 9 wells, and 9 terraces, to form this beautiful and grand view of Wudang Mountain.

The large scale of its architectural complex was planned by the emperor himself, and the construction was supervised by imperial officials specially assigned for the project. The sites of the buildings were decided by gemancy experts, and the master craftsmen of the nation were summoned for the construction under the supervision of the minister of construction. Therefore the complex is grand and imperial, brilliant and glorious, with features that none is to match. With its 8 main palaces around the center Golden Summit, the complex as a whole looks with the majesty of a royal architecture of religion.

The most distinguishing feature of Mount Wudang is the large Taoist architectural complex. Making full use of the terrain featuring towering mountains and deep valleys, more than 20 000 rooms were built in spots where they most harmoniously blended with the nearby woods, rocks and streams so that the man-built structures and natural elements complimented each other. That is also the "oneness of heaven and man" and the "way of nature" Taoism pursues. The Gold

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Hall, built in 1416 on the top of the Heavenly Pillar Peak, is the largest copper structure existing in the country. It is 5.54 meters tall and 5.8 meters wide. The walls were cast separately, but precisely and well knit. All the statues of god and sacrificial vessels are made of copper. Although 500 odd years have past, they still glitter as before.

The complex consists of buildings of three dynasties, Yuan, Ming, and Qing, but those preserved to the present are mostly built in Ming Dynasty. Specifically, the survived buildings mainly include the four palaces of Taihe Palace, South Peak Palace, Purple Firmament Palace, and Sage Encounter Palace, the remains of Jade Heaven Palace and Five Dragons Palace, as well as Yuanhe Temple, Revelation Temple and numbers of nunneries, shrines, and cave temples, altogether over 200 in number, with a total building floor of about 50 000 square meters on an area of about 1 000 000 square meters.

The religious relics kept in the palaces and temples also enjoy a fame far and wide. There are 1 486 statues of bronze, iron, wood, or stone, nearly 1 000 of which were made before Ming Dynasty. There are 409 sites of cliff face inscriptions carved in Song, Yuan, Ming, and Qing Dynasties. And there are 682 religious tools or ceremonial appliances as well as various Taoism paintings and classics. All these beautiful artifacts, tens of thousands in number, constitute the most charming scenes of human culture. In addition, Wudang Mountain is also the cradle of the Wudang Kung Fu, a martial art from Wudang Taoism that is one of the main schools of Chinese martial art.

In 1994, the World Heritage Committee of UNESCO inscribed the building groups of Wudang Mountain into World Heritage List as a cultural heritage of the whole world.

Special Mention

Wudang Mountain is considered as the cradle of the Lofty God of Xuanwu. Wudang Taoism held to austere cultivation and the alchemy of internal elixir. By "alchemy of internal elixir", they mean to use one's body as the burner to refine his "jing (vital energy)" and "chi (life force)" as the raw medicines with his "shen (spirit)" as the burning material. Once the three are refined and melted together to form the "golden pill of holy medicine", that means he has obtained the prefect revelation and will become an immortal.

Wudang Kung Fu is also called "internal Kung Fu", developed and continuously perfected by the Taoist masters of all times as a means of self defense and

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

keeping health. It advocates practicing but not showing off one's kung fu, hence uplifting the martial art to a supreme realm of ideology.

Wudang Taoist music is also referred to as "Wudang Melody". It takes in the gems of both the imperial court music and the folk music, therefore has not only the boldness and massiveness of the ancient Ba-Chu music, but the elegance and charm of the court music. Its lyrical chanting is particularly unique, which is the purest and oldest feature of the earliest Wudang Taoist music.

Major Scenic Sites

Lofty Mount Archway area: Lofty Mount Archway
Chongxu Nunnery
Sage Encounter Palace
Yuanhe Temple
Mt. Tai Temple
Jade Heaven Palace

Prince Slope area: Huilong Temple
Mind Changing Nunnery
Needle Grinding Well
Temple of Guan Yu
Peak of Supreme Patriarch
Revelation Temple
Bridge of Sword River
Eighteen Bends
Jade Heaven Peak

South Peak area: Purple Firmament Palace
Cave of Thunder God
South Peak Palace of Grand Sage
Taiyi Zhenqing Hall
Ascension Cliff
Langmei Shrine

Golden Summit area: Yellow Dragon Cave
Taihe Palace
Golden Palace

Five Dragon Palace area: Hermit Immortal Rock
Overhang Rock
Efficacious Rock

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Five Dragons Palace

Other Attractions Around the Place

Qiong Terrace area: Hall of Supreme Patriarch
Temple of Eight Immortals
Qiong Terrace Temple

武当山
Wudang Mountain

自然概况

武当山又名太和山，位于湖北省十堰市丹江口境内，是中国著名的道教圣地。武当山面临碧波万顷的丹江水库，背倚苍莽的神农架原始森林，整个景区面积约400平方公里。武当山主峰为海拔1 612米的天柱峰，周围邻里的众多风景名胜，尤其是二峰、二十四涧、十一洞、三潭、九泉、十池、九井、九台等的景色非常美丽壮观。



武当山庞大的道教建筑群是由皇帝亲自策划管理，朝廷派员营建的。在整个营建过程中，朝廷指派风水家勘测选址，汇集全国能工巧匠精心施工，工部大臣亲临督工，因而使整个建筑群气势雄伟，瑰丽辉煌，极富特色。整个建筑群以金顶为中心，八大宫为主体，具有皇家宗教建筑的气派。

武当山最具特色的景点是那片道教建筑群。这些建筑充分利用了武当山的自然风貌，依山就势，宛若天成，让人体会到道家“天人合一，道法自然”的玄妙神奇之意。两万多间房屋星罗棋布于山上的丛林、岩石或溪水之中，显得十分和谐自然，使这些人类建筑和自然风光融为一体。其中，建于1416年的金殿，高高地站立在天柱峰顶，是我国现存最大的铜质建筑。它高5.54米，宽5.8米，几面墙壁分开浇铸，但却吻合得极为精确细致。这里所有的塑像和祭坛都由铜来浇铸，虽然时隔

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

500 余年，却仍像从前一样栩栩发光。

武当山建筑群包括元、明、清三个历史时期的建筑物。目前保存下来的多为明代建筑。武当山古建筑群现存太和宫、南岩宫、紫霄宫、遇真宫四座宫殿，玉虚宫、五龙宫两处遗址，以及元和观、复真观和大量庵堂、神祠、岩庙等，共有古建筑 200 余栋，建筑面积 5 万平方米，占地 100 多万平方米。

武当山宫观里的各种宗教文物闻名遐迩，保存着铜、铁、木、石各类造像 1 486 件，其中明代以前制品近 1 000 件，宋、元、明、清摩崖碑刻 409 处，法器、供器 682 件以及图书经籍等。数以万计的精美文物构成了武当山最具魅力的人文景观。此外，武当道教中产生的武当武术为中华武术的重要流派之一。

1994 年，联合国教科文组织世界遗产委员会将武当山古建筑群作为文化遗产列入《世界遗产名录》。

特别提醒

武当山传乃玄天真武上帝的发祥地。武当道教主张清修、炼内丹。

武当功夫又称“内家功”，是由历代道门宗师开创并不断完善的防身健体之术。它提倡习武而不耀武的武德，具有极高的境界。

武当道乐又称“武当韵”，吸收了明代宫廷音乐和民间音乐的精髓，因而既有古巴楚音乐的苍劲浑厚，又有宫廷音乐的优雅风韵。抒咏性的诵唱是武当道教音乐最纯朴、最古老的本色。

主要景点

玄岳门景区：	玄岳门	冲虚庵	遇真宫
	元和观	泰山庙	玉虚宫
太子坡景区：	回龙观	回心庵	磨针井
	关帝庙	老君堂	复真观
	剑河桥	十八盘	玉虚岩
南岩景区：	紫霄宫	雷神洞	大圣南岩宫
	飞升崖	榔梅祠	
金顶景区：	黄龙洞	太和宫	金殿
五龙景区：	隐仙岩	凌虚岩	灵应岩
	五龙宫		

周边名胜

琼台景区：老君堂、八仙观、琼台观

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

三亚景点
Sanya Attractions

Natural Features

The view of bright sunshine, blue water and wide beaches at Sanya, the southernmost tip of Hainan Province, attracts many regular visitors from both home and abroad year upon year. It is said that Sanya has the most well-preserved and beautiful beaches in all of China. All of the destinations of Sanya are linked to water, hence it attains its reputation as being the "oriental Hawaii". Now, Sanya is well known and admired as a famous coastal tourist city, with a favorable climate that includes good sunshine, seawater, beaches, green vegetation and pure air.



Sanya has never run short of beautiful bays for visitors to enjoy. The Asian Dragon Bay (Yalong Wan), Dadonghai and Sanya Bay are the top three holiday resorts of Sanya. According to their quite different natural beauties and appearance, the Asian Dragon Bay is praised to be a virgin and the Dadonghai represents an elegant lady and Sanya Bay is regarded to be an unadorned fisherman's daughter. You can definitely go to any of them to enjoy your holiday.

Besides the above three bays, there is also Wuzhizhou Island, which is in Haitang Bay, north of Sanya City, attracting lots of the medium and high-end tourists every year. A gorgeous natural landscape, combined with various tourist facilities and well-developed entertaining events on the island support visitors and provide a paradise destination, just perfect for spending holidays at.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Special Mention

Tianya Haijiao

Tianya Haijiao (literally'edge of the sky, rim of the sea'), which is 23 kilometers (about 15 miles) away from the downtown center, just as its name means that it will take you to the end of heaven and earth. Ancient history recalls a beautiful love story that relates to this particular beauty spot that is enhanced by a blue sky and pure, clear seawater of Tianya Haijiao. There are three famous huge rocks here that attract lots of visitors, and many who take photos in front of them, as the Chinese characters of Tianya, Haijiao and Nantian Yizhu are respectively engraved on them.

Tianya Haijiao (literally edge of the sky, rim of the sea) is a somber-looking beach with clear water, silver sands and a hundred-odd grotesque rocks in various shapes. Standing in the center is a huge rock, about 10 meters in height, inscribed with Chinese characters of "Tianya", the handwriting of Cheng Zhe, an officer of Yazhou, in 1733, or the 11th year of Qing Emperor Yongzheng's reign, and the characters of "Haijiao", added by literaty of the ends of the Qing Dynasty. Other attractions, such as Nantian Yizhu and Haipan Nantian, are also well known.

Major Scenic Sites

1. Asian Dragon Bay (Yalong Wan)

Located 25 kilometers east of Sanya city, Asian Dragon Bay (Yalong Wan/ Yalongwan Gulf/Yalong Bay) is regarded as the best beach in Hainan province.

Asian Dragon Bay (Yalong Wan/ Yalongwan Gulf/Yalong Bay) boasts unparalleled beauty. The 7.5-kilometer (4.7-mile) long, crescent-shaped bay with an area of 18.6 square kilometers (about 7.2 square miles) is one of the famous scenic spots in Hainan Province.

With the average temperature a pleasant 25.5℃ all year-round, Yalong Bay is situated in the southernmost part of Hainan Province, 25 kilometers (about 15.5 miles) away from the tropical seaside tourist city, Sanya. The scenery is amazing, with endless rolling hills, serene gulfs, clear blue sea and silvery sand beaches—three times as long as any in Hawaii. Home to several well-preserved coral reefs with tropical fish of varied kinds, colors and shapes, the ocean here is crystal clear, allowing visitors to view underwater sights up to 10 meters (33 feet) deep from the surface.

Yalong Bay boasts the five essential elements of modern tourism: sea, sands, sunshine, lush green plants and fresh air. In 1992, the Secretary-General of the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

World Tourism Organization once marked that this bay embraces the unique and unparalleled natural settings, sands, crystal sea water, endless seashore, unspoiled hills and pristine vegetation, making it a paradise for holiday travelers.

Because of the unbeatable environment, Yalong Bay Resort was authorized by the State Council in 1992. The unique state-level tourist resort is characterized by its tropical ambiance—the resort holds seaside parks, deluxe villas, conference centers, top-end hotels, golf-courses and so on. In recent years, with the perfection of facilities, thousands of travelers are attracted by its unique charm to swarm to this ideal place for vacation. And it is the first choice for people who conduct conferences and matches, including the New Silk Road Model Look China representing the top level model contests in China.



In the centre of Yalong Bay square stands a Totem Pole of 27 meters (about 88.6 feet), on which the God of Sun, and Gods of Wind, Rain, and Thunder as well as those legendary animals such as Dragon, Phoenix, Kylin and Fish are engraved. The design of this square embodies the Chinese civilization of 5 000 years and has received recognition in winning the Luban Prize—awarded to the top level design of architecture in China.

With an area of 3 000 square meters (about 3 558 square yards), Shell Hall of Yalong Bay is located in the central square of the resort. And with the shell as its theme, the Shell Hall is a comprehensive exhibition hall combining exhibition and shopping.

When traveling through the hall, visitors will be surrounded by natural wonders dazzling each of the senses.

In the north of Yalong Bay is the site of Butterfly Valley, which is classified into five halls that present the most precious species of butterflies in China and other countries as well.

2. Dadonghai

Dadonghai, one of the most popular tropical seaside holiday areas in Hainan Province, is located 3 kilometers (about 1.9 miles) southeast of downtown Sanya, between Mt. Tuziwei and Mt. Luhuitou. Dadonghai has a crescent-shaped beach

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

2.3 kilometers long (about 1.4 miles) and clear blue sea, sunshine, white sand and green trees creating a beautiful location in the Torrid Zone.

The famous beach is ideal for diving, beach sports, bathing and sunbathing. And as it has everything to support a seaside tourist location, including a large shopping square on the shore, amusement companies and a famous dive company that can provide scuba diving, ship diving, seabed strolling, speed boat, motorboat, luxury yacht, sail boat, ocean fishing, beach sports and underwater photography, this location is renowned for water activities in Sanya and throughout China.

Dadonghai has spring-like weather all year round. The water temperature is about 20℃ even in winter, hence its reputation as an idyllic spot for winter holidaying and relaxation.

3. Luhuitou Peninsula

About 5km (3 miles) south of Sanya City in Hainan Province lies a hill extending in the shape of an enthralling deer looking back. This hill is the very same one mentioned in the legend of the Li Minority Group.

There once lived a diligent and brave hunter in the Wuzhi Mountain area so the legend goes. This young man came across a charming deer one day while out hunting in the mountain. He chased the deer for about nine days and nights, traversing numerous hills and dales.



Having reached the Luhuitou cliff edge, there was no way (where) for the deer to escape except into the churning sea below. Just as the hunter was about to shoot the deer with an arrow, it miraculously transformed into a beautiful and enchanting girl. Surprisingly, the deer was originally a fairy girl and was fond of the excellent character of the young man. She took a fancy to the seaside around Sanya and led the man here in the guise of a deer. They fell in love, got married and later settled in a village here. Hence the hill, the peninsula and the village are all named Luhuitou. Sanya City is also referred to as "Deer City".

Luhuitou Hill, at an altitude of about 280 meters (918 feet), is the main peak

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

of Luhuitou Peninsula. It's a pleasant place to appreciate the sunrise and sunset, and overlook the downtown area of Sanya City. At the foot of the hill, you can see various kinds of halobios, including starfish, crabs, sea cucumbers, actiniae and jellyfish. Up along the hill, a kind of red flower called Triangle Plum will come into view. It's the City Flower of Sanya. Halfway up the hill, a tuft of Triangle Plum, descending like a waterfall, is a really amazing sight. Not far from the flower and at the foot of an old tree stands a tablet inscribed with the red Chinese characters 'Hai Shi Shan Meng' (a solemn pledge of love). On the branches of the old tree are hanging many ribbons indicating the permanent love of peoples prayers. Walking along, you will see a pavilion called Shanmeng (unalterable love) Pavilion containing the Shanmeng Tablet, which corresponds to the four characters mentioned before. At the top of the hill, towers a twelve-meter (39 feet) high granite statue. The statue is really unique in its design; consisting of a deer looking back, flanked by the young Li hunter and the beautiful fairy girl, it's a visual reminder of the memorable legend.

The area around the statue has been turned into a park, called Luhuitou Park. The park contains the Observation Station for Halley's Comet, the white Tingchao Pavilion (a pavilion for listening to the tide), the romantic Lover Island and Monkey Hill among other attractions.

Luhuitou Peninsula is not only a romantic peninsula, but also a lush, natural environment covered with deciduous trees and plants. It is the ideal place to spend a winter holiday in China.

Other Attractions Around the Place

1. Nanshan Culture Tourism Zone

The Nanshan Culture Tourism Zone is located 40 km (24 miles) southwest of Sanya City in the Hainan Province. Countless visitors flock to the area, drawn by the beauty of Nanshan Mountain (South Mountain), making it a principal ecotourism zone. Visitors are also attracted to the area because of the profound Buddhist influence on the surrounding culture. The zone features three theme parks: Buddhism Culture Park, Blessing and Longevity Park, and Hainan Custom Culture Park.

Buddhism Culture Park was developed to portray the Buddhist culture and help people understand its profound philosophy. Highlights included the Nanshan (South Mountain) Temple, the statue of the South China Sea Kwan-yin Bodhisattva, the China Buddhism Culture Institute and the Kwan-yin Park. Visitors are awed

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

by the giant sea-side statue of Kwan-yin which stands 108 meters (353.33 feet) high. A second statue of Kwan-yin, located nearby, stands 3.8 meters high (12.47 feet) and was constructed out of gold, diamonds and jade, among other precious stones. It is said that its craftsmen used over 100 kg of gold to make this statue.

Blessing and Longevity Park embodies the essence of Chinese culture, conveying an atmosphere of peace and fortune. Hainan Custom Culture Park is filled with the characteristics of Hainan Province. It takes advantage of its picturesque location (by Nanshan Mountain) to showcase tropical scenery and the customs of Li and Miao ethnic minorities.

In the Nanshan Culture Tourism Zone, you will be able to feast your eyes on the beautiful location, while dining on the area renowned vegetarian dishes. Cooks make use of wild mushrooms and other vegetables when preparing delicious and nutritious dishes.

After you dine, be sure to attend the classical concert and kung fu performance. The concert band is comprised of 14 Chinese young girls. They use traditional instruments such as the Erhu, zither, lute (pipa), and flute, to create beautiful Chinese Music. The Chinese kung fu performance is splendid as well. One cannot fully appreciate the skill and technique of Chinese kung fu without witnessing a live performance such as this one.

If you would like to increase your understanding and appreciation of Buddhism, or to experience the life of the Li and Miao ethnic minorities, a visit to the Nanshan Culture Tourism Zone is a must.

2. Wuzhizhou Island

Wuzhizhou Island, in Haitang Bay, has an area of some 1.48 square kilometers (365.7 acres). With an irregular butterfly-like shape and a total coastline of 5.7 km (3.54 miles), the island is about 30 km (18.6 miles) north-east of Sanya City. Wuzhizhou Island was known as Guqizhou Island in ancient times and the earliest records date from the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911), when a temple was built to commemorate the originator of Chinese characters, Cang Jie. Following the Qing Government's fall from power, the villagers rebuilt the temple to honor the Goddess Matsu, who bestowed good fortune on the local fishermen. From 1949 Wuzhizhou Island became an important strategic defense zone.

However, from the 1990s, the island began to enjoy a completely new role as a romantic place for holiday and leisure.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

As the island is in a tropical marine zone, the climate is temperate and pleasant all year round. It is an ideal place for vacation, winter swimming as well as entertainment. There are over 2 700 plant varieties on the island, including the tall trees and dense bushes.

The eastern and southern parts of the island are hilly and two high mountains connect to form a peak about 79.9 meters (262 feet) high.

In the west and north, the terrain is level. Soft white sand stretches as far as the eye can see beside a crystal clear blue sea, where protected coral reefs are rich in conches, sea urchins, sea cucumbers and tropical fishes of various colors.

As well as Goddess Matsu Temple, there are many places of interest to visit including the Lover's Bridge, Sunrise Rock, the Gold Turtle Stretching toward the Sea, Lover's Island and the Life Well. The Sunrise Rock is the ideal spot from which to observe the sunrise.



Apart from these natural sites, swimming pools, bars, gymnasiums and other places of entertainment are available in the northwest part of the island. For those who love extreme sports local facilities include surfing, gliding, sailing and canoeing. For relaxation there is sun bathing and sea water bathing. In addition, Wuzhizhou Island is famous for scuba diving as coral reefs and brightly colored tropical fish abound in the warm water. Currently, only a third of the island has been developed.

In addition to the natural attractions of the island, tourists are certain to be pleased by the delightful catering facilities here. In the south of the island there are the Buffet Lunch Restaurant, the Pirate Bar, the Seafood Pool and the Chinese Restaurant all providing excellent food. The Summer Western Food Restaurant in the east corner and the Winter Western Food Restaurant in the west corner of the island also offer a choice of delicious food. Local caught lobsters, prawns, crabs, conch, sea cucumbers and jellyfish will make your mouth water! Furthermore, this island is rich in fruits; bananas, coconuts, mangos and other tropical fruits are plentiful and inexpensive.

For those who want to spend a night on the island, Wuzhizhou Island Holiday Center offers 81 Guest Rooms with a choice of perfect facilities. Onshore Wooden

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cabin and the Presidents' Villa on the southern seashore, and other rooms located in the inner island, such as Deluxe Mountain Room and Sea-view Wooden Building are all very pleasant. Furthermore, all the rooms have views of the fine scenery of the island.

Tips:

1. There are public telephones on the island, and phones in the hotel rooms are available subject to a deposit. Cell phone signals are good in the vacation village, on Sunrise Rock up in the mountains as well as on the nearby seashore.

2. There are outlets on the island where one can rent diving equipment and under-water cameras.

3. In order to avoid sunburn, sun-bloc, hats and sunglasses are necessary. Summer clothes are suitable at most times as the annual average temperature is 25℃ ~30℃. But from January to March, long-sleeved T-shirts or similar should be taken as the temperatures in the morning and evening are low.

4. It is about 38km (23.6 miles) from the Sanya Fenghuang (Phoenix) International Airport (SYX) to Wuzhizhou Wharf. It takes just over fifty minutes by taxi.

5. As there is no direct bus available from Sanya city center to Wuzhizhou Wharf, the best options are a taxi or a self-drive hire car to the Wuzhizhou Wharf. It takes about CNY50 for a one-way trip and CNY150-CNY200 for a round trip. There are ferries from 7:40 am to 6:00 pm every 20 minutes to the island. It takes 10 minutes to reach the island by ferry.

6. As well as the Wuzhizhou Wharf, the Summer Wharf with its two berths is also used to land at the island. It is open from March each year depending upon the change of seasons instead of the Wuzhizhou Wharf.



三亚景点
Sanya Attractions

自然概况

三亚地处海南省的最南端。这里明媚的阳光、蔚蓝的海水和宽阔的海滩，年复一年地吸引着许多来自国内外的游客。据说三亚有中国保存最好

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

和最美丽的海滩。三亚所有旅游景点都与水相关，由此，三亚获得了“东方夏威夷”的美誉。现在，三亚作为著名的沿海旅游城市已经享有盛名且令人神往，其优越的气候条件包括美妙的阳光、海水、海滩、绿色植被以及清爽洁净的空气。

游客随时可以享用三亚的美丽海湾。亚龙湾、大东海和三亚湾是三亚名列前茅的三个度假胜地。根据它们各自迥然不同的自然美景和风貌，亚龙湾被赞誉为纯生态处女湾，大东海代表一位典雅的夫人，三亚湾则视作一位质朴渔夫的女儿。游客可以选择其中之一去享受假日的快乐。

除上述三个海湾以外，还有每年吸引众多中、高端游客，位于三亚市北海堂湾的蜈支洲岛。蜈支洲岛是一个华美的自然景观，这个景观融各种旅游设施和精心开发的娱乐项目和活动为一体，为游客提供了一个天堂般的游览胜地和完美度假之所。

特别提醒

天涯海角游览区

天涯海角（字面意思是“天之崖、海之边”）距市中心 23 公里（约 15 英里）。天涯海角，顾名思义，就是要把您带到天堂和地球的末端。古代历史记载了与天涯海角这一特殊名胜蔚蓝的天空和清澈的海水相关联的爱情故事。这里有三块著名的巨大岩石，吸引着众多的游客，许多人在岩石前面留影纪念，因为上面分别刻着“天涯”、“海角”和“南天一柱”几个汉字。

天涯海角是一个海天一色的沙滩。这里有清澈的海水，银色的沙子和耸立在沙滩上的百余块大小不一的奇石。中央的一块高约 10 米，上面刻着“天涯“（1733 年或清朝雍正 11 年崖州太守陈哲的手迹）和下方是清末文人补刻的“海角”几个汉字。此外，其他景点还有”南天一柱“和”海判南天“也是很有名的。

主要景点

1. 亚龙湾国家旅游度假区

亚龙湾位于三亚市东 25 公里处，被视为海南最好的海滩。

亚龙湾全长 7.5 公里（4.7 英里），月牙形的海湾面积为 18.6 平方公里（约 7.2 平方英里）。亚龙湾的美丽无与伦比，是海南省著名景点之一。

亚龙湾位于海南省的最南端，距离热带海边旅游城市三亚 25 公里（约 15.5 英里），全年气候宜人，平均温度 25.5℃。这里风景迷人，绵延不尽的山岭，平静的海湾，蔚蓝的大海和银色的沙滩——是夏威夷内沙滩的三倍长。保存良好的珊瑚礁附近，生长着种类、颜色和形状各异的热带鱼。这里的海水清澈透明，透过海面，游客可以看到水深 10 米（33 英尺）处的景色。

亚龙湾现代旅游业引以为豪的五个根本要素是：海水、沙滩、阳光、繁茂的绿色植物和新鲜空气。1992 年，世界旅游组织秘书长曾经评价说：这个海湾拥有独特和无与伦比的自然设施、沙滩、水晶般的海水、绵延无尽的海滨、保存完好的山丘和

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

原始植被，所有这一切，使她成为假日游客的天堂。



由于她无与伦比的环境，国务院于1992年批建了亚龙湾旅游胜地海滨公园、豪华别墅、会议中心、高级宾馆、高尔夫球场等热带环境是亚龙湾独特的国家级旅游胜地的特点。近年来，亚龙湾以其完美的设施和独特的魅力，吸引着数以万计的游客涌往这个理想的地方来度假。此外，她还是第一个被选为举办会议和比赛的场所，包括代表中国顶端赛事的“新丝绸之路中国模特大赛”。

在亚龙湾广场中伫立着一颗27米（约88.6英尺）高的图腾柱，上面雕刻着太阳神、风神、雨神和雷神以及龙、凤、麒麟和鱼等传奇动物。这个广场的设计体现了中国5 000年的文明，并获中国建筑最高设计奖鲁班奖，从而得到了公认。

占地3 000平方米（约3 558平方码）的亚龙湾贝壳馆位于该旅游胜地的中心广场。贝壳馆是以贝壳为主题，集展览和购物为一体的综合展览馆。

参观者穿越大厅时，会被这些刺激每种感官的自然奇观所包围。

亚龙湾的北面是蝴蝶谷所在地。蝴蝶谷分为五个厅，分别展出中国以及其他国家最珍贵的蝴蝶品种。

2. 大东海风景区

大东海是海南省最受欢迎的热带海滨度假地之一。大东海旅游区位于距三亚市区3公里的兔子尾和鹿回头两山之间。其月牙形的海湾长2.3公里，这里白沙融融，辽阔的海面晶莹如镜，阳光、碧水、沙滩、绿树构成了一幅美丽的热带风光。

大东海著名的海滩是潜水、海滩运动、旅游（洗海水澡）和日光浴的理想场所。它具有海边游区的一切便利设施，包括一个大型岸边购物广场、娱乐公司和一家可以提供潜水、海底漫步、快艇、汽艇、豪华游艇、帆船、海洋捕鱼、海滩运动和水下摄影服务的著名潜水公司。此处以其水上运动而闻名于三亚和整个中国。

大东海四季如春，冬季水温约20℃，是冬日度假和休闲的理想之地。

3. 鹿回头山顶公园

海南省三亚市区南边区约5公里处绵延座落着一座小山。这座山形如一只回头凝望的迷人小鹿。这就是黎族传奇故事中提及的完那座山。

据传说，很久以前，五指山地区有一位勤劳勇敢的猎人。一天，这位年轻人在

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

山上打猎时偶然发现了一只美丽的花鹿。他穷追不舍，一直追了九天九夜，翻过了无数山头和溪谷。

他一直追到鹿回头悬崖边缘，花鹿没有别的办法，要想逃命只有跳入下面的汹涌大海。正当猎人搭箭射向花鹿时，花鹿奇迹般变成一位美丽迷人的姑娘。令人吃惊的是，花鹿还是一位仙女。她非常喜欢年轻人的优秀品格。她喜欢三亚附近的海滨，让这位年轻人假扮一只鹿来到这里。他们坠入爱河、结婚并在这里的一个村庄定居下来。从此，这里的小山、半岛和村庄一起取名为鹿回头。三亚市也因此被称为“鹿城”。

鹿回头山海拔高约280米，是鹿回头山顶公园的主峰，是观赏日出和日落、鸟瞰三亚市区的好地方。山脚下，游客可以看到各种各样的海洋生物，包括海星、蟹、海参、海葵和水母。沿山而上，映入眼帘的是一种名叫“三角梅”的红花，这是三亚的市花。在半山腰，一簇簇“三角梅”像瀑布一样向下延伸，真是美极了。在离花不远的一棵古树脚下，竖着一块山盟碑，上面写着“海誓山盟”（爱的誓言）几个红色汉字。古树的枝条上悬挂着很多表明祈祷者爱心永恒的丝带。向前走，游客会看见一个名叫“山盟亭”（不变的爱）的亭子，里面有前述写有四个汉字的山盟碑。在山顶上屹立着一座12米高的花岗岩雕像。雕像设计独特，上刻有回头鹿，侧面为黎族青年猎人和美丽的仙女。这是一个令人难忘的传奇故事视觉提示物。



雕像周围地区已经变成了一个公园，叫“鹿回头”公园。公园里哈雷彗星观察站、白色的“听潮亭”（听潮的亭子），还有浪漫的“情人岛”以及“猴山”等其他景点。

鹿回头山顶公园不但是一个浪漫的半岛，还拥有一个被各种落叶树和植物所覆盖的青葱茂密的自然环境，是中国冬天度假的理想胜地。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

周边名胜

1. 南山文化旅游区

南山文化旅游区域距海南省三亚市西南 40 公里(24 英里)。南山的美丽景色吸引了无数的游客,使她成为一个主要的生态旅游区。这里之所以吸引大批游客,还因为佛教对南山周边文化的深刻影响。旅游区的一大特色是其 3 个主题公园:南山佛教文化园,福寿文化园和海南风情文化园。

开发佛教文化园的目的是为了描绘佛教文化,并帮助人们了解它的深奥哲学。这里的亮点有南山寺、南海观音佛像、观音文化苑、天竺圣迹,佛名胜景观苑。游客们对 108 米(353.33 英尺)高的观音佛像深感敬畏。附近的第二座观音佛像高 3.8 米(12.47 英尺),是用金、钻石和翡翠镶嵌在其他宝石中建造而成的。据说,工匠们用了 100 多千克黄金才造就了这座雕像。

福寿文化园体现了中国文化的精髓,传递着和平和好运。海南风情文化园到处显现着海南省的特色,并利用其独特的位置(依傍南山),展示着热带风景和黎族、苗族少数民族的风情。

在南山文化旅游区内,游客可以尽情地欣赏这个美丽的地方,还可以尽情地享用当地著名的素食餐。厨师用野蘑菇和其他蔬菜为游客准备好了营养丰富的美味佳肴。

用餐后,一定要参加古典音乐会和功夫表演。音乐会乐队由 14 位年轻中国姑娘组成。他们用传统的乐器,如二胡、古筝、琵琶以及长笛等,弹奏出美妙的中国音乐。中国功夫表演也是极好的。如果没有亲眼目睹现场表演,就不能完全理解中国功夫这项技能。

如果游客想增强对佛教的理解和欣赏,或者想亲身经历黎族和苗族少数民族的生活,那就必须要游览南山文化旅游区。

2. 蜈支州岛度假中心

蜈支州岛座落在海棠湾,面积约为 1.48 平方公里(365.7 英亩),全岛呈现不规则蝴蝶状,海岸线全长 5.7 公里(3.54 英里),距三亚市东北约 30 公里(18.6 英里)。古代蜈支州岛被称为“古奇洲岛”,最早的记录可以追溯到清朝(1644 ~ 1911)。当时建造了一座庙以纪念中国汉字的创造者仓颉。清政府失去权位后,村民又建造了妈祖庙,向把好运给予本地渔民的妈祖表示敬意。从 1949 年起,蜈支州岛就成为一个重要的战略性防御区域。

而从 20 世纪 90 年代表,蜈支州岛就开始享受她的全新职能——度假和休闲浪漫胜地。

蜈支州岛属热带海洋气候,全年温和气爽,四季怡人,是一个度假、冬泳和休闲的理想胜地。岛上有 2 700 多种植物,乔木高大挺拔,灌木浓密葳蕤。

东部和南部多山,两座南山连接形成一个高约 79.9 米(262 英尺)的山峰。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

西部和北部地形水平。柔软的白色沙滩伸展到望不见尽头的透明碧绿的蓝色海边，保护完好的珊瑚礁群里生长着丰富的海螺、海胆、海参和各种颜色的热带鱼。

除了妈祖庙外，还有很多名胜古迹供游客参观，如“情人桥”、“观日岩”、“金龟探海”、“情人岛”、“生命井”等。“观日岩”是观看日出的理想地。



除了这些自然场所，蜈支州岛西北还有游泳池、酒吧、健身房和其他娱乐的地方可以享用。对于极限运动爱好者来说，这里有冲浪运动、滑翔、航行和划艇。要想放松自己，这里有日光浴和海水浴。另外，蜈支州岛还因潜水而出名，因为在这儿的暖水中有丰富的珊瑚礁和鲜艳的热带鱼。目前，该岛只开发了三分之一。

岛上除了这些自然景观外，游客当然还会对这里的餐饮业感到满足。岛的南部有自助餐午餐餐厅、海盗吧、海鲜池和中国餐馆，它们都会给游客提供丰盛的餐饮。在岛上东部角落的夏季西餐厅和西部角落的冬天西餐餐厅也提供多种美味佳肴可以选择。在当地捕抓的龙虾、对虾、蟹、海螺、海参和水母会使游客馋得流口水！而且，岛上有丰富、价廉的水果，如香蕉、椰子、芒果和其他热带水果等。

对想要在岛上度一晚的游客来说，蜈支州岛度假中心设有 81 间设施完善的客房。南岸上的临岸木屋和总统别墅，以及位于岛内的其他房间如豪华山屋和观海木楼等，都非常令人满意。此外，从所有的客房里，游客都可以欣赏到岛上迷人的风景。

提示：

1. 岛上有公用电话，客房里的电话要交押金方可以使用。度假村内、观日岩上以及近海海岸上的移动电话信号良好。

2. 岛上有商店，游客可以去那时租用潜水设备和水下照相机。

3. 为了避免晒黑，防晒霜、帽子和墨镜是必要的。由于年平均温度是 25 ~ 30 摄氏度，所以大多时间里适宜着夏装。但从 1 月到 3 月，由于早晚温度较低，应该带着长袖 T 恤或者类似的衣服。

4. 从三亚凤凰国际机场(SYX)到蜈支州岛码头大约 38 公里(23.6 英里)。乘出租车仅需 50 多分钟。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

5. 因为没有从三亚市中心到蜈支州岛码头的直达车，所以最好的选择是乘出租车或者租车自驾到蜈支州岛码头。单程约 50 元，往返 150 ~ 200 元。从上午 7:40到下午 6:00，每 20 分钟有到岛上的船渡，乘渡船到达该岛需 10 分钟。

6. 除了蜈支州岛码头，还有个夏天码头，那里有两个可以使用的停泊处。根据季节的变化，夏天码头每年从 3 月起开放使用，以替代蜈支州岛码头。

海口景点
Haikou Attractions

Natural Features

Haikou, also known as the "Coconut City", is the capital of Hainan Province, China's second largest island. The city is the provincial administrative center of Hainan as well being the focus of the local economy, culture and transportation. Haikou stands at the northern end of Hainan Island, on the west bank of the Nandu River estuary.



With the sea on three sides, Haikou enjoys a long coastline that features excellent bathing beaches and sea side resorts. Holiday Beach is the most popular of these, while Xixiu Beach is where the National sailing and windsurfing teams train and hold competitions.

The downtown area of the city has an excellent environment with streets lined with coconut palms.

Besides its excellent natural resources, Haikou has a number of important sites of historical interest. Dongjiao Coconut Plantation, Dongzhai Harbor Mangrove Natural Reserve Area, Holiday Beach, Nanli Lake, Qiongtai Academy, Tomb of Hai Rui, Tropical Ocean World, Wugong Temples, Wuzhi Mountain and Xiuying Emplacement are all wonderful places for tourists.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Haikou has evolved from a simple sightseeing city to an attractive seaside resort and business center. The services for visitors to the city are being extended with the aim of establishing Haikou as Southern China's key center for tourism.

Special Mention

Tropical Ocean World

Haikou Tropical Ocean World, located in Binhai Xi Lu (west road of Binhai), is the first big tropical and oceanic theme park in China. Covering an area of 89 acres (33 acres sea area and 8 acres sand beach area), it is a paradise where you can not only see the tropical rain forest's marvelous spectacles but also the wonders of ocean life. You can also view the most advanced movies and enjoy high-tech entertainment facilities, along with the sunshine and the surf of the sea.

Millennium Tower

Built in the year 2000 in the shape of a fish and standing 131.101meters (430 feet) tall, the Millennium Tower symbolizes the ocean culture of the new century in Hainan. As it is the highest sight-seeing tower in the world, it was listed in the Guinness (Book of Records) in 2000. When you ride the elevators to the three-story sight-seeing platforms you have a bird's-eye view of the city of Haikou and a panoramic view of the entire Qiongzhou Strait.

Performance Plaza

With a 20 foot long flexible stage and a lift platform in addition to the main stage, the Performance Plaza is the largest one among similar theme parks in China and has the most beautiful stage. The auditorium is divided into two sections: The Center Stand and the Zoology Stand can each hold about 2 300 spectators. On any evening between 8pm and 10pm, under the bright and colorful lights, you can lose yourself in the rich and remarkable programs performed by the performance group, which is made up of nearly 220 actors.

Tropical Rain Forest

If you're fascinated by the wonders of nature, your appetite will be satisfied in the Tropical Rain Forest. Four different sections too miraculous to be missed are scattered throughout this area. In the Rare Trees Garden you can see many species of rare trees from all over Hainan Province, and the Tropical Flowers Garden contains a veritable ocean of gorgeous, aromatic flowers.

Covering an area of 8 acres, the Tropical Rain Forest will bring you into another world where you can experience the feeling of walking in a tropical forest full of lush, verdant trees and mysterious paths. You will also see some valuable trees

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

like upas. After viewing the breathtaking sights, you can grab a bite to eat at the Tropical Melon and Fruit Garden.

Major Scenic Sites

1. Dongjiao Coconut Plantation

Known variously as the "Kingdom of Coconuts", "Golden Seashore", and "Forest Park over the Sea", Dongjiao Coconut Plantation is a delightful choice for a holiday visit.

Dongjiao Coconut Plantation is located on the seaside of Dongjiao Town, Wenchang City in Hainan and is most well-known for its broad coconut plantation. There goes a saying that coconuts of Wenchang yield half of those grown in Hainan and the most famous is Dongjiao Coconut Plantation. The plantation is literally a forest with over 500 000 coconut trees including the red, green, well-bred, short, tall and other varieties.

Walking along the shady paths in the forest, special scenic spots provide a feast for the senses. Coconut Bayou, whose scenery is pictured on the famous series of stamps named "Seashore Scenery", engenders a peaceful and idyllic feeling of nature.

In the Coconut Park, you'll be inundated in a sea of coconuts of different shapes and sizes, including the uniquely "King Three Branches of Coconuts" named for the grotesquely large branches in the tree. Also noteworthy is Shuiwei Shengniang Miao, a temple for praying to the believed goddess Shuiwei Shengniang to protect the fishermen.

2. Dongzhai Harbor Mangrove Natural Reserve Area

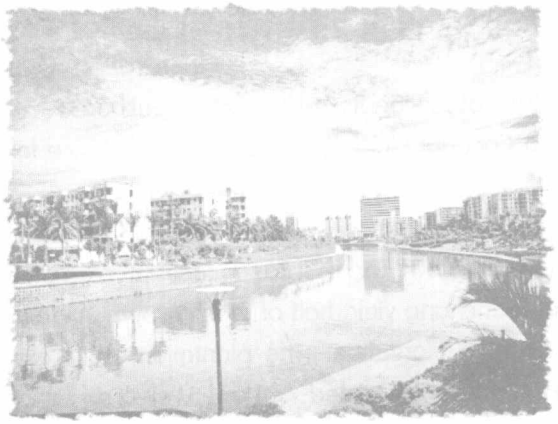
Known for the largest and the first mangrove natural reserve area in China, Dongzhai Harbor is located in the northeast of Haikou City with an area of 3 337.6 hectares (about 8 247 acres). It is a typical tropical jungle, and the mangrove tree family can be seen everywhere in the area. Mangrove is a kind of tropical tree that grows in swamps and sends roots down from its branches.

Dongzhai Harbor Mangrove Natural Reserve Area is also called "heaven for birds". About 159 species of birds inhabit the reserve, including many rare migratory birds. So it is not only a national mangrove reserve, but it is also a wetland of international importance especially as a waterfowl habitat.

During the winter, the best season for bird watching in Dongzhai Harbor, tens of thousands of birds turn the area into a wonderland. Because of the nourishment the mangroves provide to the swamp, marine animals prefer to spawn and raise

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

their infants here. Fish, shrimp and shellfish in abundance can fill visitors' stomach freshly and palatably, and provide a substantial feast for the birds.



Apart from the beautiful scenery, there is another natural wonder in Dongzhai Harbor: Villages under the sea. Historical writings say that at midnight on July 13th, 1605, a severe earthquake occurred and made 72 villages subside into the sea. Hundreds of years later, the 72 villages have become an amazing underwater sight waiting for visitors to discover their extraordinary story.

3. Holiday Beach

Holiday Beach is a major recreational resort in the west of Haikou City, in Hainan Province. The beach, some six kms (about 3.7 miles) long, enjoys a wonderful climate (average temperature of 75.2℉), with sparkling waters, waving coconut trees, and plenty of sunshine and blue skies.

The resort has four zones:

Sea Sports: Here, one can enjoy swimming, sail-boarding, kayaking, or just lazing on the beach.

Food and Culture: the Guanjingtai Plaza provides excellent sightseeing and a wide variety of restaurants and bars to satisfy every palate. The International Fishing Club offers high-tech fishing tools and makes you enjoy the happiness of fishing.

The Fun Section: this offers a wide range of family entertainment: the Music Square, a roller-skating course, a Children's Movement Center, the Kingdom of Butterflies, and much more. Especially popular is the World above Water with its water ballet and diving presentations.

Relaxation: Holiday Beach provides accommodation in a relaxing environment: everything from villas and chalets to tents and hammocks is comfortable, clean and safe.

An unusual feature of the Holiday Beach Resort is the "kissing fish". These fish can live happily in 104℉ water, and they will nibble at your body to provide de-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

lightful underwater skin-cleansing care!

4. Nanli Lake

The Nanli Lake is a famous scenic site in Haikou City, Hainan Province, located in Ding'an County, about 40 kilometers (24.85 miles) far away from Haikou. It covers 46 square kilometers (11 367 acres) and the area of the lake is 12.3 square kilometers (3 039 acres). Here the average water temperature is around 22℃ (71.6℉) and the climate is quite good for the body.

It is a large man-made lake. In 1958, the people of Ding'an built the Nanfu Reservoir here. As a result, the water gathered in the valley became today's Nanli Lake and the mountains became the islands in the lake. When mentioning islands, maybe you are not familiar with them. However, the islands in Nanli Lake are so unique. There are 13 islands and five peninsulas in all. The shapes of the islands are varied, such as the square, oblong and round ones. Among them, the largest one covers 39 600 square meters (9.79 acres), while the smallest is 3 200 square meters (0.79 acres).

Furthermore, lush trees and beautiful wild flowers grow on the islands; wild rabbits jump in the bush and birds show the beauty of their voice. Boating on the lake, you might think you are wandering "One-thousand-island Country". And emerald water mingles with the hills to seem like a bright painting, while the islands are the green pearls dotting in this picture.

Additionally, as a scenic site, Nanli Lake provides splendid service of accommodation, catering and entertainment and the facilities are ample, including sumptuous hotels, restaurants, villas, the golf course and some facilities of entertainment above water. Thus, going on a holiday there will not disappoint you.

5. Qiongtai Academy

Qiongtai Academy is located on Wenzhuang Road, in the Qiongshan District of Haikou City. It was initially built in 1705 in memory of Qiu Jun, a famous scholar from the Ming Dynasty. The academy was named Qiongtai because Qiu Jun was called "Mr. Qiongtai". At one time, the academy was the supreme institution of Qiongshan. It is now the site of the Qiongshan Teachers' Training School.

The main building of the academy is the "Kuixing Lou Building". "Kuixing" was believed to be the god of examinations and the building was named after Kuixing to "help" the students who trained here to win the imperial examinations. The building is a typical Chinese brick-and-wood structure architecture with two floors. Green tiles, red corridors, carved beams and painted rafters are splendidly

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

set off by the green trees which surround the building.

The events behind the famous story Search the Academy occurred here. Sometime during the Qing Dynasty, a student of the academy fell in love with a maid of local governor. At that time, young people did not have the right to choose their husband or wife. So the governor was very angry after he found out about the relationship. The maid escaped before he could punish her and ran into the academy for help. The governor wanted to search the academy, but the schoolmaster Xie Bao denied his request and sent the maid out of the city during the night. Finally, the maid and the student married. They lived happily together, and later the student succeeded in the imperial examinations.

6. Tomb of Hai Rui



Tomb of Hai Rui is situated in the western outskirts of Haikou City, 5 kilometers (3.1 miles) from the civic center. It represents people's esteem towards Hai Rui, an upright and uncorrupted official. It was originally built in 1589 during the Ming Dynasty (1368 ~ 1644), and some of the constructions in the tomb garden remain intact. The tomb garden occupies an area of over 4 000 square meters, and today it is rated as the Key Cultural Relic Preservation of Hainan Province.

Tomb of Hai Rui is a place worthy of a visit because there you can not only view the scenery and constructions, but also know more about Hai Rui.

Going across the Hai Rui Bridge and entering the tomb garden, you will be greeted by the exuberant pines and coconut palms and sweet lotus. Along the path stand stone statues of lions, goats and horses. Walking forward and stepping up three levels of stairs, you can see a stone tortoise carrying a stele on its back.

Thirty meters farther is the tomb area of Hai Rui. In front of it lies an incense burner which is also solemn. On each side stand four 4-meter-high monuments by Hai Rui's disciples and colleagues. Behind those is the tomb of Hai Rui.

7. Wugong Temples

Wugong Temples, are approximately 5 kilometers (about 3.1 miles) from the centre of Haikou City, and were originally constructed during the reign of Emperor Wanli in the Ming Dynasty (1368 ~ 1644). It was renovated on several occasions

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

during the Qing Dynasty (1644 ~ 1911). Now, it is a place known for its sense of peace, tranquility and beauty.

After many years of renovation and development, the existing Wugong Temples are now an attractive ancient architectural complex that include the Wugong Temple (Five Officials' Temple), the Sugong, Hairui and Fubo Temples, and Guanjia Tang (Watching Crop Hall), and Xuepu Tang (Studying Hall). They cover an area of about 2 800 square meters (about 0.69 acres).

Wugong Temple is the main part of this building complex and Wugong Temple is considered to be "the No. 1 Building in Hainan" even though it is only a two-storied wooden building. This was constructed to commemorate the five famous officials—Li Deyu, Li Gang, Zhao Ding, Li Guang and Hu Quan who were banished to Hainan during the Tang Dynasty (618 ~ 907) and the Song Dynasty (960 ~ 1279).

Sugong Temple, located in the east of the Wugong Temple, is another fascinating destination. Su Dongpo was one of the greatest poets of the Song Dynasty. He dug two springs for the locals when he heard that they were finding it difficult to get water supplies. Hence the local people constructed a temple to commemorate his contribution to their community. One of the springs still exists even to this day.

On the right of the Wugong Temple, there is a peaceful yard where fresh flowers and thriving trees are planted. There are two main buildings here. One, the Xuepu Tang, is the old site where the famous scholar Guo Wanxiang often gave lectures. The other is Wugong Jingshe, which is where the students of the Hainan Province, (at the end of the Qing Dynasty) learned historical works and poems.

Other Attractions Around the Place

Wuzhi Mountain

Wuzhi Mountain (Wuzhi Shan), located in Wuzhi Shan City, is the highest peak, with an altitude of 1 867m (6 125 feet). In fact this mountain is 343m (1 125 feet) higher than Mt. Tai, and has been long regarded as the premier peak of China's five most famous mountains.

Wuzhi Mountain is the symbol of the island. The region has been listed by the International Tourism Organization in recognition of its supreme natural scenery which comprises one of the few natural rain forests surviving in the world today. Wuzhi means five fingers in Chinese and the mountain owes its name to its formation.

The best time for visiting Wuzhi Mountain is between November and April the following year, while the best time for taking a trip down the canyon is from July to

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

October. This area is an ideal place to visit if you want to avoid sunburn while escaping from the cold of more northern climes.

The best time for visiting Wuzhi Mountain is between November and April the following year, while the best time for taking a trip down the canyon is from July to October. This area is an ideal place to visit if you want to avoid sunburn while escaping from the cold of more northern climes.

Xixiu Seaside Park

Xixiu Seaside Park used to be Xiuying Bathing Beach, which is a national training base for sailing boats. Next to the Holiday Seaside, Xixiu Seaside Park occupies 100mu, and the coastline is 1.2km.

According to the plan of the State General Administration of Sports and Haikou municipal government, Xixiu Seaside Park will be built into a multi-functional seaside fit for race, sport, relaxation and entertainment, which contains an international training and competing base for sailing boat, an international yacht dock, a public beach for swimming and water sports, and offers seaside tours and related services.

The tour items at present are: Water Sports Center (including motorboat, sailing boat), Seaside Service Center (including beach football, beach volleyball and sandy beach arena for entertainment), Sunshine Theatre, Barbecue Ground and Beer Heaven.



海口景点
Haikou Attractions

自然概况

以“椰城”著称的海口是海南省省会，中国第二大岛屿。这座城市是海南省政治、经济、文化、交通中心。由于它位于海南岛的北端和南渡江口西侧，故取名为海口。

海口市四面环海，拥有漫长的海岸线，形成了上佳的海水浴场和海边胜地特征。“假日海滩”是其中最为著名的景点，而西秀海滩则是全国帆船和帆板运动队的训练和举行比赛的地方。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

海口市区的环境极好，街道两旁栽满了椰子树。

除了自然风光秀丽之外，海口还存有许多重要的历史名胜古迹。东郊椰林、东寨港国家级自然保护区、度假海滩、南丽湖、琼台书院、海瑞墓、热带海洋世界、五公祠、五指山和秀英炮台等景点，都是游者去往的绝佳之地。

海口已经从一座单一的观光城市逐步变成具有强大吸引力的海滨胜地和商业中心。为了把海口建设成华南的重要旅游中心，为城市观光者而准备的服务正逐步拓展。

特别提醒

热带海洋世界

海南热带海洋世界位于海口市滨海西路，是中国第一个以“热带”和“海洋”为主题的大型主题公园。公园占陆地面积 89 英亩（海面 33 英亩，沙滩 8 英亩）。这是一片乐园，游人不但可以看到热带雨林的奇特景观，还可以看到海洋生命的奇迹。此外，除了享受阳光和冲浪的奇妙感受之外，还能观看到最先进的电影和享受高科技娱乐设施。

海南千年塔



园内的海南千年塔建于 2000 年，塔呈鱼状，高 131.101 米，象征着新世纪海南的海洋文化。海南千年塔是世界上最高的观景塔，2000 年被载入《世界吉尼斯纪录大全》。乘电梯来到三层观光平台的时候，游人可以俯瞰海口市景和琼洲海峡全景。

演艺舞台

演艺舞台为目前国内同类主题公园中最大、舞台设施最完善的舞台。除舞台外，还有一座 20 英尺长的伸缩台和一个升降台。演艺广场观众席分为两个区域：中心看台和生态看台。两个看台都可以容纳观众 2 300 人左右。每晚 8 时至 10 时的黄金时段，在明亮和五彩缤纷的灯光下，海洋世界组建的近 220 人的演艺团体在此倾情为游人带来丰富多彩的演艺盛会。

热带雨林

如果游人着迷于自然奇观，可以在热带雨林里得到满足。这里有 4 个不同的园区不容错过，因为它们实在太令人称奇了！在热带珍稀树种园里，游人可以看到海南全省许多稀有的树种。热带花卉园里有大量名符其实的艳丽、芳香的花卉。

热带雨林面积为 8 英亩，它将带领游人走进另一个世界。在这里，游人可以感受漫步在树木葱茏，曲径通幽的热带森林的感觉。此外，还可以看到“见血封喉”这样的名贵树种。观看了令人赞叹不已的景观之后，游人可以在热带瓜果园内随便买点东西品尝。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

主要景点

1. 东郊椰林

被世人誉为“椰子王国”、“黄金海岸”、“海上森林公园”的东郊椰林，是旅游度假的一块胜地。

东郊椰林位于海南省文昌市东郊镇海滨，以其广袤的椰林最为出名。正如人们所说“文昌椰子半海南，东郊椰林最风光”。这里椰树成片，椰姿百态，有红椰、青椰、良种矮椰、高椰和其他椰树品种，共50多万株。

在椰林里漫步，每步皆景。被印上邮票“海滨风光”的椰林湾，组成一幅悠闲静谧的田园自然风光图。掩映在椰林中的景点有椰子公园——主要是各种各样的椰树，其中以“三杈椰王”最为有名。象征着庇护渔民的“水尾圣娘庙”也同样引人注目。

2. 东寨港红树林自然保护区

东寨港是中国最大和最早的红树林自然保护区，它坐落在海口市的东北部，占地面积为3 337.6公顷(大约8 274亩)。东寨港红树林自然保护区是典型的热带丛林，区内红树群落随处可见。红树林是热带、亚热带海岸潮间带特有的木本植物群落，是一种独特的湿地生态类型。

东寨港红树林自然保护区还有“鸟类天堂”之称。保护区内生存着159种鸟类，其中包括许多稀有的候鸟。因此，这个地方不但是国家红树林保护区，而且还是国际重要湿地，特别是水鸟的重要栖息湿地。



东寨港红树林自然保护区的冬季是观鸟的最佳季节，此时，成千上万只鸟儿把整个地区变成了一块仙地。红树林为湿地提供着营养，由于有了这些营养，海生动物都愿意到这儿产卵和养育后代。大量的鱼、虾和贝壳类动物可以使游者一饱口福，还能给鸟儿提供丰盛的食物。

除了美丽的风景之外，东寨港还有另一个自然奇观：海底村庄。史书上说，1605年7月13日的半夜时分，这儿发生了一次严重的地震。地震使72座村庄沉入海底。几百年后，这72座村庄已经成为水下奇观，等待着游者去发掘它们不寻常的故事。

3. 假日海滩

假日海滩是海南省海口西部的一处主要娱乐胜地。此处的海滩长约6公里(约3.7英里)，气候宜人(平均温度75.2华氏度)。这里，晶莹闪烁的海水、婆娑舞动的椰树、充沛的阳光和蓝色的天空相映成趣，构成一幅美丽动人的自然画面。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

4个功能区域：

海上运动区：这儿，人们可以尽情地享受游泳、帆板运动、橡皮船等运动所带来的乐趣，或可在海滩上闲散漫步。

餐饮文化区：观景台广场为游客提供了绝佳的观光场所。这儿有种类繁多的饭店和酒吧，可以满足各种口味。国际捕鱼俱乐部提供了高科技捕鱼工具，使游客得以尽情享受捕鱼乐趣。

娱乐区：这儿向游客提供了范围广泛的家庭娱乐活动项目。音乐广场、滚轴溜冰场、儿童运动中心、蝴蝶王国和更多的其他运动项目，尤其是受欢迎的以水上芭蕾、高空跳水表演项目而著称的“水世界”。

休闲度假区：假日海滩提供轻松的住宿环境。从别墅和小屋到帐篷和吊床，都十分舒适、清洁和安全。

假日海滩度假胜地的一大特色是“接吻鱼”，这些鱼能在104华氏度的水下快乐地生活。它们会轻咬你的身体，给你提供愉快的水下皮肤清洁护理！

4. 海口南丽湖

南丽湖位于海南省的定安县，是海口市的一个著名景点，离海口大约40公里(24.85英里)。南丽湖面积46平方公里(11 367英亩)，湖区12.3平方公里(3 039英亩)。这里的平均水温大约22摄氏度(71.6华氏度)，气候对人的身体十分有益。

南丽湖是一个宏大的人工湖。1958年，定安人在这里建造了南福水库。因此，山谷里聚集的水便形成了今天的南丽湖，附近的山则成了湖中岛。提及这些湖中岛，游人或许对它们不太熟悉，但南丽湖里的岛屿却十分独特。这儿总计有13座岛屿和5个半岛。岛屿的形状各异，有方形的，有长方形的，也有环形的。其中最大的面积为39 600平方米(9.79英亩)，最小的岛屿的面积为3 200平方米(0.79英亩)。

此外，岛上植物茂密，野花争艳；野兔在灌木丛里蹦蹦跳跳，鸟儿展示着自己的美丽歌喉。在湖上划船，你会感觉自己正徘徊在“千岛之国”。翠绿的海水与山丘交织在一起，如同一幅明亮的油画，而那些岛屿则如同点缀在这幅油画中的绿色珍珠。

作为一个风景旅游点，南丽湖还为游人提供住宿、备办食物和娱乐的全套服务。这儿的设施齐全，有豪华饭店、餐厅、别墅、高尔夫球场，还有一些水上娱乐设备。因此，在这儿度假会使游人大有所获。

5. 琼台书院

琼台书院位于海口市琼山区文庄路，始建于清朝1705年，据说是为了纪念明朝著名大学士丘浚而建造的(1368～1644)。由于丘浚号琼台，人称琼台先生，书院由此得名。这里曾是琼州的最高学府，现为琼台师范学校的校址。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

琼台书院的主楼是魁星楼。据说，魁星是负责科考的神，大楼之所以被命名为魁星楼，是要“帮助”在这儿受训的学生通过皇家考试。魁星楼是一座典型的两层中国砖木建筑。绿瓦、红廊、雕梁画栋掩映在周围的绿树之间。

著名的粤剧和琼剧传统剧目《搜书院》中的故事就发生在这里。清朝年间，书院的一名学生爱上了本地总督的一个女仆。那时，年轻人无权选择自己的丈夫或妻子，因此，在查明他们之间的关系后，总督非常愤怒。在总督处罚她之前，这个女仆逃跑到书院求助。总督欲搜寻书院，但是书院掌教谢宝拒绝了这一要求，并趁夜晚把女仆送出城去。最后，女仆和这名学生得以成婚，他们愉快地生活在一起，后来，这名学生在皇家科举考试中考中。

6. 海瑞墓

海瑞墓位于海口市西郊，距市中心 5 公里(3.1 英里)。海瑞墓象征着人们对海瑞这位刚正不阿官员的敬仰。海瑞墓园始建于明朝 1589 年，墓园里的一些建筑至今依然保存完好。墓园占地 4 000 多平方米，被评为海南省重点文物保护单位。

海瑞墓是一个十分值得参观的景点，因为在这儿，游人不仅可以观看风景和各种建筑，而且还可以更多地了解海瑞。

穿过海瑞桥，进入墓园，迎接游人的是茂盛的松树、椰子树和芳香的荷花。甬道两旁坚立着石羊、石马、石狮、石龟等石雕。再向前走，登上三级台阶，一只背上驼着一根石柱的石乌龟映入眼帘。

再向前行 30 米便是海瑞墓了。墓前安放着一只也同样显得庄严肃穆的香炉。香炉四周耸立着海瑞的弟子和同事们给海瑞立的 4 座 4 米高的纪念碑。纪念碑的后面，便是海瑞墓了。

7. 五公祠

五公祠距海口市中心约 5 公里(大约 3.1 英里)，明朝万历年间和清朝时期几经修缮，如今，这里以其静谧和绚丽的景色而著称。

经过多年的修缮和发展之后，现在的五公祠已成为一个具有吸引力的古代建筑群，包括五公祠、苏公祠、海瑞祠、两伏波祠、观稼堂、学圃堂，占地大约 2 800 平方米。

五公祠是整个建筑群的主体。尽管只是一座两层木质建筑，但五公祠却被誉为“海南第一楼”，是为纪念唐、宋时期被贬谪到海南的五位著名历史人物——唐代名相李德裕，宋代名相李纲、赵鼎、李光和名臣胡铨而建造的，故而得名五公祠。

五公祠东侧的苏公祠是另一个迷人的景点。苏东坡是宋代最伟大的诗人之一，当他听说当地百姓缺少水源时，便为他们挖掘了两眼水泉。因此，当地人民为了纪念苏东坡为他们做出的贡献而修建了苏公祠。其中一眼水泉如今依然完好。

五公祠右边有一座安静的院落，种养着鲜花和茂盛的树木。这里有两座主体建筑，一座是学圃堂，是浙江名士郭晓香经常讲学的故址，另一座是五公精舍，是晚

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

清海南学子研习经史诗文之地。

周边名胜

五指山风景区

五指山坐落于五指山市，是海南第一高山，高 1 867 米。事实上，五指山比泰山高出 343 米，长期以来，被视作中国五大名山之首。

五指山是海南岛的象征，因其是世界现存为数不多的自然雨林的极佳自然景色而被国际旅游组织列为 A 级旅游点。在中文里，“五指”的意思是“五个指头”。该山峰峦起伏成锯齿状，形似五指，故得名。

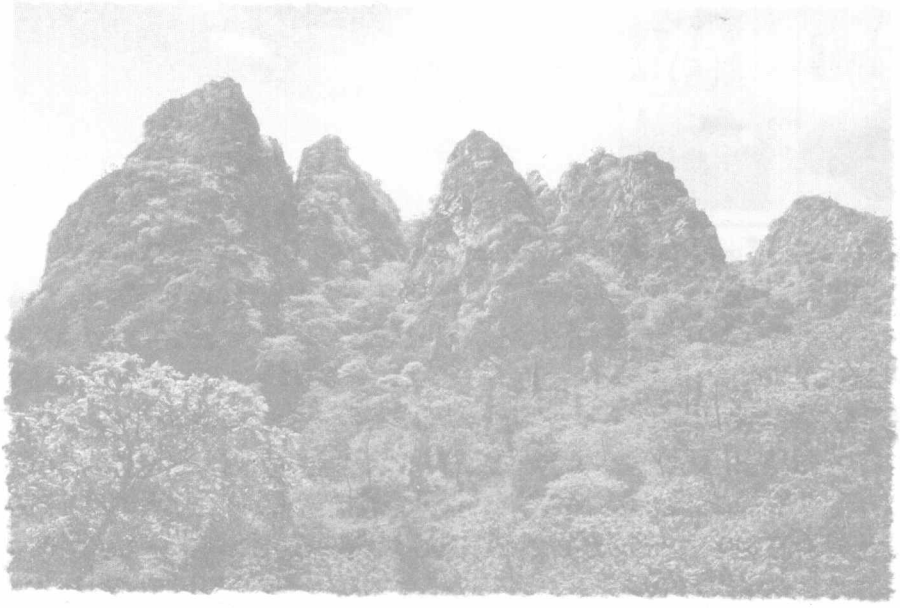
游览五指山的最好时节是 11 月到次年 4 月期间，而 7 月至 10 月则是顺峡谷漂流游览的最好时间。欲在躲避北方的寒冷气候的时候避免日晒，这一地区便是游人理想的游览之地。

西秀海滩公园

西秀海滩公园的过去是秀英海水浴场，是国家帆船训练基地，与假日海滩毗邻，占地 6.67 公顷，海岸线长 1.2 公里。

根据国家体育总局和海口市政府的计划，西秀海滩公园将被建成一个适宜于综合竞技、运动、休闲和娱乐的多功能海滩，包括一个国际帆船训练和比赛基地、一个国际游艇码头及一个大众海滨游泳场和水上运动中心，并提供滨海旅游及其相关服务。

目前的旅游项目有：水上运动中心（包括汽艇，帆船）、滨海服务中心（包括海滩足球、沙滩排球和沙滩娱乐竞技场）、阳光剧院、烧烤地和啤酒天堂。



教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

[General Information]
书名=用英语说中国：旅游
作者=李兆平，仲锡主编
页数=257
SS号=12115791
DX号=000006600042
出版日期=2008.8
出版社=上海科学普及出版社

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

封面
书名
版权
前言
目录
Chapter 1　华北地区
　　颐和园
　　北戴河
　　万里长城
　　避暑山庄与外八庙
　　北京故宫
　　天坛
　　孔庙孔府孔林
　　周口店——北京人遗址
　　泰山
　　平遥古城
　　大同云冈石窟
　　哈尔滨国际冰雪节和哈尔滨冰雪大世界
　　呼和浩特五塔寺和其他塔寺
Chapter 2　华东地区
　　黄山
　　武夷山
　　庐山
　　苏州园林
　　西湖
　　鼓浪屿
　　太湖
　　周庄
　　徐州的“汉代三绝”
　　游览旅游城——南京
　　上海观光
　　皖南古村落——西递村与宏村
　　千年古镇同里
Chapter 3　西南地区
　　峨眉山——乐山大佛
　　九寨沟

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

黄龙
青城山——都江堰
重庆大足石刻
布达拉宫
丽江古城
Chapter 4　西北地区
秦始皇陵
延安
敦煌莫高窟
Chapter 5　中南地区
长江三峡
桂林山水
嵩山——少林寺
武陵源
龙门石窟
武当山
三亚景点
海口景点

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙



公众号：铅笔钥匙（qianbiyaoshi）

微信扫描二维码，关注我们公众号

优质教育资源每日免费分享

欢迎关注我们

本资源来源于网络收集整理，版权归原作者所有

本资源为电子载体，分享仅限于家庭使用或交流心得

不得以任何理由用于商业用途，因此而造成的不良后果请自行承担！